

DocuPrint CM225 fw

User Guide



Apple, Bonjour, ColorSync, iPad, iPhone, iPod touch, Macintosh, Mac OS, and OS X are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple Inc. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.

Android, Google Chrome, Gmail, Google, Google Cloud Print, Google Drive, and Google Play are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Google Inc.

Adobe, Photoshop, and PostScript are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

PCL is a trademark of Hewlett-Packard Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Microsoft, Windows Vista, Windows, Windows Server, Visual C++, Visual Studio, and Internet Explorer are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds.

Novell and SUSE are registered trademarks of Novell, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

Red Hat and Red Hat Enterprise Linux are registered trademarks of Red Hat, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.

Ubuntu is a registered trademark of Canonical Ltd.

Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct are registered trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance. Wi-Fi Protected Setup, WPA, and WPA2 are trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

All product/brand names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective holders.

Microsoft product screen shot(s) reprinted with permission from Microsoft Corporation.

In this manual, safety instructions are preceded by the symbol . Always read and follow the instructions before performing the required procedures.

It may be a legal offence to print currency notes, certificates of stocks and securities, or any other documents of similar nature, regardless of whether they will be used.

Fuji Xerox is not responsible for any breakdown of machines due to infection of computer virus or computer hacking.

WARNING:

This equipment will be inoperable when mains power fails.

IMPORTANT:

1. This manual is copyrighted with all rights reserved. Under the copyright laws, this manual may not be copied or modified in whole or part, without the written consent of the publisher.
2. Parts of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.
3. We welcome any comments on ambiguities, errors, omissions, or missing pages.
4. Never attempt any procedure on the machine that is not specifically described in this manual. Unauthorized operation can cause faults or accidents. Fuji Xerox is not liable for any problems resulting from unauthorized operation of the equipment.

Xerox, Xerox and Design, as well as Fuji Xerox and Design are registered trademarks or trademarks of Xerox Corporation in Japan and/or other countries.

DocuWorks is a registered trademark or trademark of Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

DocuPrint and CentreWare are registered trademarks or trademarks of Xerox Corporation in Japan and/or other countries.

Preface

Thank you for purchasing the DocuPrint CM225 fw.

This guide is intended for users who use the printer for the first time, and provides all the necessary operating information about the print, copy, scan, and fax functions.

Please read this guide to achieve the best performance from this printer.

This guide assumes you are familiar with computers and the basics of network operation and configuration.

After reading this guide, keep it safe and handy for future reference.

Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

Contents

Preface	3
Types of Manuals	11
Using This Guide	12
Organization	12
Conventions	12
Product Features	13
1 Specifications	16
Basic Function/Copy Function	17
Print Function	19
Scan Function	21
Fax Function	22
Direct Fax Function	23
2 Basic Operation	24
Main Components	25
Front View	25
Rear View	26
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)	26
Operator Panel	27
Turning On/Off the Printer	30
Turning On Your Printer	30
Turning Off Your Printer	31
Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel	32
Printing a Panel Settings Page	34
Using the Operator Panel	34
Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)	34
Power Saver Mode	35
Exiting the Power Saver Mode	35
3 Printer Management Software	36
Print and Scan Drivers	37
CentreWare Internet Services	38
Creating an Administrative Password	38
Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)	39
SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)	40
Launcher (Windows Only)	41
Address Book Editor	42
Express Scan Manager	43
Setup Disk Creation Tool (Windows Only)	44
DocuWorks (Windows Only)	45
4 Printer Connection and Software Installation	46
Overview of Printer Connection and Software Installation	47
USB Connection	47
Ethernet Connection	47
Wireless Connection	48
Connecting Your Printer	49

Available Features for Each Connection Type	50
Connecting Printer to Your Computer	51
Setting the IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)	56
Printer's TCP/IP and IP Addresses	56
Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address.....	56
Assigning an IP Address Manually.....	57
Verifying the IP Settings	59
Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Windows	60
Identifying Print Driver Pre-install Status (for Network Connection Setup)	60
Using Installer to Set Up Connection and Install Software.....	61
Using Installer to Install Software	64
Installing the XML Paper Specification (XPS) Print Driver	65
Setting Up for Web Services on Devices (WSD)	72
Setting Up for Shared Printing	74
Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Mac OS X	83
Installing the Print Driver	83
Installing Software	83
Adding a Printer	83
Configuring Printer and Installing the Print Driver on Linux (CUPS).....	88
Installing the Print Driver	88
Setting Up the Queue.....	89
Setting the Default Queue	90
Specifying the Printing Options	90
 5 Printing Basics	 91
About Print Media	92
Print Media Usage Guidelines.....	92
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) Guidelines	93
Print Media That Can Damage Your Printer	93
Print Media Storage Guidelines	94
Supported Print Media	95
Usable Print Media	95
Loading Print Media	96
Capacity	96
Print Media Dimensions	96
Loading Print Media in the Standard 150 Sheet Tray	96
Manual Duplex Printing	100
Using the Output Tray Extension	103
Setting Paper Sizes and Types.....	104
Setting Paper Sizes.....	104
Setting Paper Types.....	104
Printing.....	105
Printing from the Computer	105
Canceling a Print Job	106
Using the Secure Print Feature	107
Direct Print Using the USB Storage Device	109
Selecting Printing Options	110
Printing on Custom Size Paper	112
Checking Status of Print Job	114
Printing With Wi-Fi Direct	114
Mobile Printing	119
Printing With AirPrint	119
Printing With Google Cloud Print	120

	Printing a Report Page	122
	Printer Settings	123
6	Copying	125
	Loading Paper for Copying	126
	Preparing a Document	127
	Making Copies From the Document Glass	128
	Making Copies From the ADF	130
	Setting Copy Options	131
	Output Color	131
	Lighten / Darken	131
	Document Type	131
	Sharpness	132
	Auto Background Suppression	132
	Collated	132
	Reduce / Enlarge	133
	Document Size	134
	N-Up	135
	Edge Erase	136
	Using the ID Card Copy	137
	Changing the Default Settings	138
7	Scanning	139
	Scanning Overview	140
	Scanning - From Computer	140
	Scanning - From Printer	140
	Scanning to a Computer	141
	Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to Application	141
	Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to WSD (Web Services on Devices)	141
	Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver	143
	Scanning Using the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) Driver	144
	Scanning to a Computer or Server via SMB/FTP	145
	Overview	145
	Confirming a Login Name and Password	146
	Specifying a Destination to Store the Document	148
	Configuring the Printer Settings	156
	Sending the Scanned File to the Network	162
	Scanning to a USB Storage Device	163
	Specifying a Folder to Save the Scanned Image	164
	Sending an E-mail With the Scanned Image	165
	Setting an E-mail Address Book	165
	Sending an E-mail With the Scanned File	167
	Adjusting Scanning Options	168
	Adjusting the Default Scan Settings	168
	Changing the Scan Settings Options	170
8	Faxing	171
	Connecting the Telephone Line	172
	Configuring Fax Initial Settings	174
	Setting Your Region	174
	Setting the Printer ID	174

Setting the Time and Date	175
Changing the Clock Mode	175
Sending a Fax.....	176
Loading an Original Document on the ADF	176
Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass	177
Lighten / Darken	178
Resolution	178
Original Type	179
Inserting a Pause	179
Sending a Fax Automatically.....	180
Sending a Fax Manually.....	181
Confirming Transmissions.....	181
Automatic Redialing	181
Sending a Delayed Fax.....	182
Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax)	183
For Windows	183
For Mac OS X	186
Receiving a Fax	188
About Receiving Modes	188
Loading Paper for Receiving Faxes	188
Receiving a Fax Automatically in the FAX Mode	188
Receiving a Fax Manually in the TEL Mode.....	188
Receiving a Fax Automatically in the TEL/FAX Mode or Ans/FAX Mode.....	188
Receiving a Fax Manually Using an External Telephone.....	189
Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD Mode	189
Receiving Faxes in the Memory.....	189
Polling Receive	190
Automatic Dialing	191
Speed Dialing	191
Storing a Number for Speed Dialing	191
Sending a Fax Using a Speed Dial	192
Group Dialing	192
Setting Group Dial.....	193
Editing Group Dial	193
Sending a Fax Using Group Dialing (Multi-address Transmission)	194
Printing a Fax Address Book List.....	194
Address Book.....	195
Other Ways to Fax	196
Using the Secure Receiving Mode.....	196
Using an Answering Machine.....	197
Using a Computer Modem	197
Setting Sounds.....	198
Speaker Volume.....	198
Ringer Volume	198
Specifying the Fax Settings	199
Changing the Fax Settings Options	199
Available Fax Setting Options	200
Changing the Default Settings	203
Printing a Report.....	204
 9 Using the Operator Panel Menus and Keypad	 205
Understanding the Printer Menus	206
Report / List.....	206

	Meter Readings	207
	Wi-Fi Status	207
	Admin Settings	207
	Defaults Settings	239
	Paper Tray Settings	247
	Language Settings	249
	Panel Lock Function	250
	Enabling the Panel Lock	250
	Changing the Panel Lock Password	250
	Disabling the Panel Lock.....	251
	Limiting Access to Printer Operations.....	252
	Changing the Language.....	253
	Setting the Time for the Power Saver Mode	254
	About the Concurrent Jobs Feature.....	255
	Resetting to Factory Defaults.....	256
	Entering Characters	257
	Using the Keyboard Displayed on the Touch Panel.....	257
	Using the Number Pad.....	257
10	Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book	258
	Setting Server Address Book and Server Phone Book.....	259
11	Digital Certificates.....	260
	Using Digital Certificates.....	261
	Setting a Digital Certificate	261
	Managing the Digital Certificate	263
	Setting the SSL/TLS Communication Feature	264
12	Troubleshooting	265
	Clearing Jams	266
	Avoiding Jams	266
	Identifying the Location of Paper Jams	267
	Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF	268
	Clearing Paper Jams From the Front of the Printer	270
	Clearing Paper Jams From the Rear of the Printer.....	271
	Clearing Paper Jams From the Center Output Tray.....	273
	Jam Problems	275
	Basic Printer Problems	276
	Display Problems	277
	Printing Problems.....	278
	Print Quality Problems	279
	The Output Is Too Light	280
	Toner Smears or Print Comes Off/Stain on Back Side	281
	Random Spots/Blurred Images	281
	The Entire Output Is Blank	282
	Streaks Appear on the Output.....	282
	Pitched Color Dots	282
	Vertical Blanks	282
	Mottle	283
	Ghosting.....	283
	Fog	284
	Bead-Carry-Out (BCO).....	284

	Auger Mark	285
	Wrinkled/Stained Paper	286
	The Top Margin Is Incorrect	286
	Color Registration Is Out of Alignment	287
	Protrudent/Bumpy Paper	288
	Copy Problem	289
	Copy Quality Problems	290
	Adjusting Color Registration	291
	Performing Auto Correct	291
	Printing the Color Registration Chart	292
	Determining Values	293
	Entering Values	294
	Fax Problems	296
	Scanning Problems	298
	Scan Driver/Printer Utility Problems	300
	Wireless Problems	301
	Wi-Fi Direct Problems	302
	Digital Certificate Problems	303
	Other Problem	304
	Understanding Printer Messages	305
	Contacting Service	313
	Getting Help	314
	Touch Panel Messages	314
	SimpleMonitor Alerts (Windows Only)	314
	Obtaining the Product Information	314
	Non-Genuine Mode	315
	Using the Operator Panel	315
	Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)	315
13	Maintenance	316
	Cleaning the Printer	317
	Cleaning the Scanner	317
	Cleaning the ADF Feed Roller	319
	Cleaning Inside the Printer	320
	Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor	323
	Replacing Toner Cartridges	324
	Overview	325
	Removing the Toner Cartridges	326
	Installing a Toner Cartridge	327
	Ordering Supplies	329
	Consumables	329
	When to Order Toner Cartridges	329
	Recycling Supplies	329
	Storing Consumables	330
	Managing the Printer	331
	Checking or Managing the Printer With the CentreWare Internet Services	331
	Checking Printer Status With the SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)	331
	Checking Printer Status Through E-mail	332
	Conserving Supplies	333
	Checking Page Counts	334
	Moving the Printer	335
14	Contacting Fuji Xerox	337

Technical Support	338
Online Services	339
Index	340

Types of Manuals

Paper Manuals

Safety Guide	Describes the information you need to know before using the printer and how to operate the printer safely.
Setup Guide	Provides step-by-step instructions on how to set up your printer. Also describes how to check the network connection.
Lifting Your Printer	Describes how to lift and hold your printer.

Manuals Included on the Software Pack CD-ROM

User Guide (this guide)	Describes how to get ready to print and set various features. It also covers the operator panel menus, troubleshooting tips, and maintenance information.
Troubleshooting Guide	Describes the troubleshooting tips for printer problems such as paper jams. This guide can be opened from the Launcher.
Product Features	Describes the product features. This guide can be opened from the installer.
Show Me How	Describes the error recovery procedures for the printer. This can be opened from the SimpleMonitor.
PostScript 3 Compatible User Guide	Describes how to set up your printer as a PostScript 3 Compatible printer and the features that can be configured on your print driver.

Using This Guide

■ Organization

This guide is organized into the following chapters. The summary of each chapter is as follows:

1 Specifications	Describes the printer specifications.
2 Basic Operation	Describes the main components of the printer, the power saver mode, and how to turn on/off the printer.
3 Printer Management Software	Describes the software available for the printer.
4 Printer Connection and Software Installation	Describes the basic information about how to connect the printer to your computer and how to install the print driver.
5 Printing Basics	Describes the supported paper, how to load paper, and how to print data using various print features.
6 Copying	Describes how to copy documents and the adjustment features.
7 Scanning	Describes how to set and use the Scan features.
8 Faxing	Describes how to set and use the Fax features.
9 Using the Operator Panel Menus and Keypad	Describes the setting items available on the operator panel, their setup procedures, and how to use the number pad.
10 Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book	Describes how to set the server address book and server phone book.
11 Digital Certificates	Describes how to create and manage digital certificates.
12 Troubleshooting	Describes the troubleshooting tips for printer problems such as paper jams.
13 Maintenance	Describes how to clean the printer, how to replace toner cartridges, and how to see the printer status.
14 Contacting Fuji Xerox	Describes support information.

■ Conventions

- In this guide, personal computers and workstations are collectively called "computers".
- The following terms are used throughout this guide:

IMPORTANT:

- Important information that must be read and followed.

NOTE:

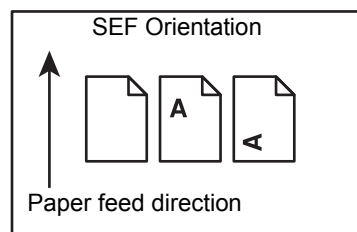
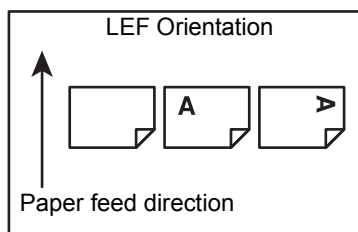
- Additional information that merits emphasis.

See also:

- References within this guide.
- Orientation of documents or paper is described in this guide as follows:

 , Long Edge Feed (LEF): Loading the document or paper in landscape orientation.

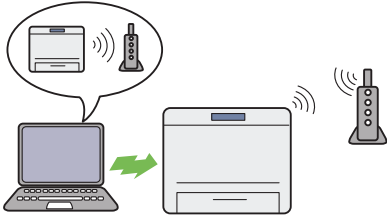
 , Short Edge Feed (SEF): Loading the document or paper in portrait orientation.



- Some of the items in the screen shots and illustrations may not be displayed or available depending on your printer model.

Product Features

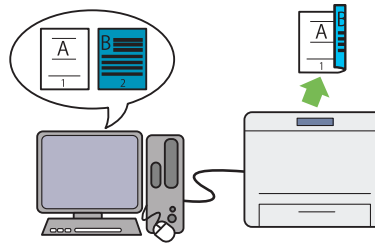
Easy Wireless Connection Set Up (EZInstall)



You can easily connect the printer to a wireless network by using the installer on the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.

For more information, see "Configuring Wireless Connection Settings" on page 62.

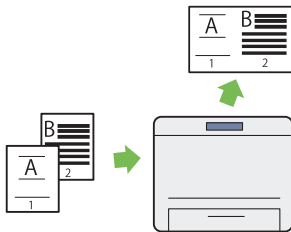
Manual Duplex Print



The duplex print feature allows you to print two or more pages on the front and back sides of a single sheet of paper manually. This feature helps reduce paper consumption.

For more information, see "Manual Duplex Printing" on page 100.

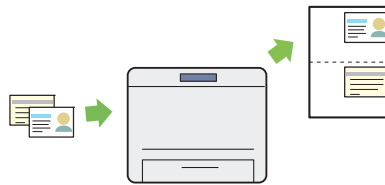
N-Up (2-in-1 Copy)



The N-Up copy feature allows you to copy two original pages on a single sheet of paper. This feature helps reduce paper consumption.

For more information, see "N-Up" on page 135.

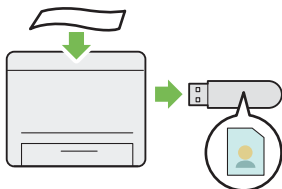
ID Card Copy



You can copy both sides of an ID card on one side of a single sheet of paper in its original size by selecting ID Card Copy on the touch panel. This feature helps to show both sides of an ID card in one page in its original size.

For more information, see "Using the ID Card Copy" on page 137.

Scanning to a USB Storage Device



You do not need a computer to connect your USB storage device to save the scanned data. Insert your USB storage device in the port on the printer, and save the scanned data directly to your USB storage device.

For more information, see "Scanning to a USB Storage Device" on page 163.

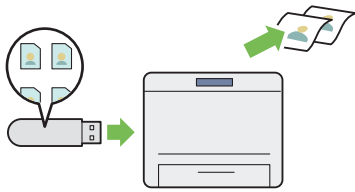
Printing Through Wireless Connection (Wireless Print)



The wireless LAN feature on your printer allows you to install the printer at any location, and enables printing without a wired connection to your computer.

For more information, see "Wireless Connection" on page 52.

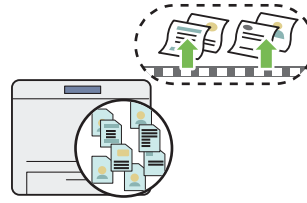
USB Direct Print



The Print from USB feature allows you to print directly from your USB storage device without requiring you to start your computer and an application.

For more information, see "Direct Print Using the USB Storage Device" on page 109.

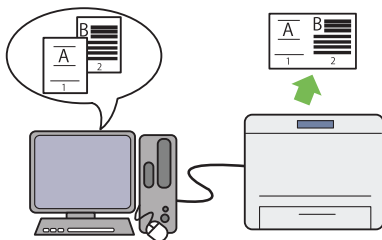
Secure Print



The Secure Print feature allows you to temporarily store your print data in the printer memory and output it later. You can effectively manage your time when you print confidential data or large-volume data at off-peak hours.

For more information, see "Using the Secure Print Feature" on page 107.

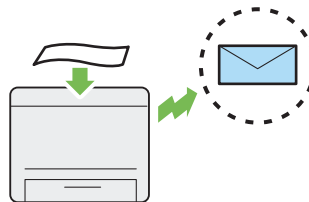
Multiple Up Print



The multiple up print feature allows you to print multiple pages on a single sheet of paper. This feature helps reduce the paper consumption.

For more information, refer to the Help provided for the print driver.

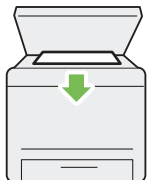
Scan to E-mail



When you want to send scanned data by e-mail, use the Scan to E-mail feature. You can directly send the data scanned as an e-mail attachment. You can choose destination e-mail addresses from the address book on the printer or server. Or, you can enter the address using the keyboard displayed on the touch panel.

For more information, see "Sending an E-mail With the Scanned Image" on page 165.

Scan From Document Glass



You can scan the pages of a book or a brochure from the document glass. When you scan documents using the document glass, place them face down.

For more information, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 128.

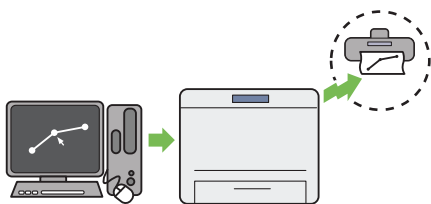
Scan From ADF



You can scan sheets of unbound paper using the automatic document feeder (ADF). When you scan documents using the ADF, load them face up.

For more information, see "Making Copies From the ADF" on page 130.

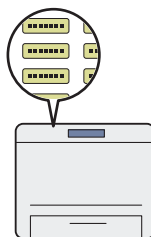
Direct Fax from Computer



You can directly send faxes from your computer using the fax driver. You can specify the fax settings like the normal fax. Also, you can specify the recipient's fax number using the number pad, or the address book.

For more information, see "Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax)" on page 183.

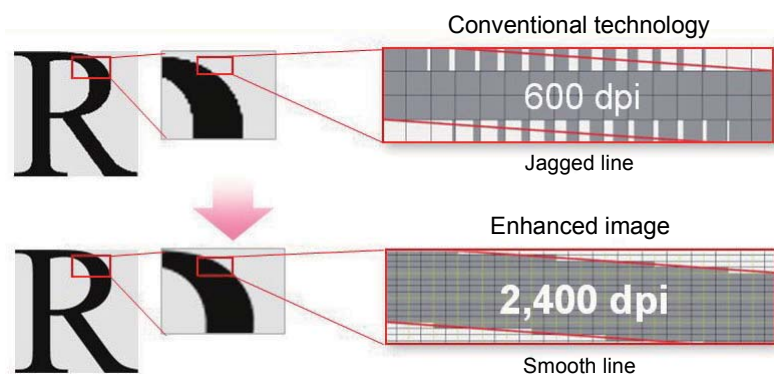
Address Book



Address Book simplifies the recipient specification. You can use the address book on the printer as well as on the server. Select the desired address or fax number from the address book when using the Scan to E-mail or Scan to Network feature, or sending faxes.

For more information, see "Address Book Editor" on page 42.

Fuji Xerox Imaging Technology



This printer reproduces smooth lines and gradations by 1200 × 2400 dpi high-resolution LED print heads and Micro Accurate Control Screen (MACS) Technology.

In addition, the color registration of each toner is corrected with ultra high precision through a digital process by Image Registration Control Technology (IReCT).

Specifications

This chapter lists the main specifications of the printer. Note that the specifications of the product may change without prior notice.

- "Basic Function/Copy Function" on page 17
- "Print Function" on page 19
- "Scan Function" on page 21
- "Fax Function" on page 22
- "Direct Fax Function" on page 23

Basic Function/Copy Function

Type	Console
Memory	512 MB
Color Capability	Full color
Scan Resolution	Document glass: 600 × 600 dpi Automatic document feeder: 600 × 300 dpi
Print Resolution	1200 × 2400 dpi
Halftone/Printable Colors	256 tones/color (16.7 million colors)
Warm-Up Time	35 seconds or less (at 22°C room temperature) IMPORTANT: It may take longer due to the image quality adjustment.
Original Paper Size	Document glass: The maximum size is 215.9 × 297 mm for both sheets and books. Automatic document feeder: The maximum size is 215.9 × 355.6 mm.
Output Paper Size	Maximum: Legal Minimum: 76.2 × 127 mm (3 × 5") Image loss width: Top edge, 4 mm or less; bottom edge, 4 mm or less; left and right edges, 4 mm or less
Output Paper Weight	60 – 163 gsm IMPORTANT: Use paper recommended by Fuji Xerox. Copying may not be performed correctly depending on the conditions.
First Copy Output Time	Monochrome: 20.0 seconds (for A4 ) / monochrome mode) Color: 30.0 seconds (for A4 ) / color mode) IMPORTANT: The values may vary depending on the machine configuration.
Reduction/Enlargement	Size-for-Size: 1:1 ± 1.3% Preset %: 50%, 70%, 81%, 100%, 122%, 141%, 200% Variable %: 25 – 400% (1% increments)
Continuous Copy Speed	Document glass: Monochrome: 18 sheets/minute Color: 18 sheets/minute Automatic document feeder: Monochrome: 18 sheets/minute Color: 8 sheets/minute IMPORTANT: - Print speed may decrease due to factors such as paper type, paper size, and printing conditions. - When continuously printing a single document of A4 .
Paper Tray Capacity	Standard: 150 sheets (Standard 150 sheet tray) Maximum paper capacity: 150 sheets (standard) IMPORTANT: When using Fuji Xerox P paper (64 gsm)
Continuous Copy	99 images NOTE: The machine may pause temporarily to perform image stabilization.

Output Tray Capacity	Approximately 100 sheets (face down ) IMPORTANT: • When using Fuji Xerox P paper (64 gsm)
Power Supply	AC 110 – 127 V $\pm$ 10%; 7 A; both 50/60 Hz $\pm$ 3 Hz AC 220 – 240 V $\pm$ 10%; 5 A; both 50/60 Hz $\pm$ 3 Hz IMPORTANT: • Power outlets that provide the above power level are recommended.
Power Consumption	Maximum power consumption: 820 W or less Low power mode: 25 W or less Sleep mode: 3 W or less Standby mode: 42 W or less
Dimensions	410 (W) $\times$ 439 (D) $\times$ 388 (H) mm
Weight	17 kg IMPORTANT: • The weight of paper is not included. • The weight of the toner cartridges is included.
Space Requirement	921 (W) $\times$ 1310 (D) mm IMPORTANT: • When the standard 150 sheet tray is pulled out and the rear cover is open.

Print Function

Type	Built-in
Continuous Print Speed	Same as the Copy Function
Print Resolution	Same as the Copy Function
Page Description Language	PCL and PostScript 3 Compatible
Protocol	Ethernet (standard): TCP/IP (IPv4/IPv6, LPD, IPP, IPPS, Port9100, WSD, HTTP, HTTPS, SMTP, RARP, AutoIP), SNMP, DHCP, DHCPv6, BOOTP, Bonjour (mDNS), AirPrint, Google Cloud Print™ IEEE 802.11b/802.11g/802.11n (standard) NOTE: • WSD stands for Web Services on Devices.

Operating System	PCL6 driver: Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows Vista® (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 7 (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 8 (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 8.1 (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows Vista® (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 7 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 R2 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 8 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 8.1 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 R2 (64-bit) PostScript 3 Compatible: Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows Vista® (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 7 (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 8 (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 8.1 (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows Vista® (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 7 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 R2 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 8 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 8.1 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 R2 (64-bit) Mac OS X 10.5 Leopard Mac OS X 10.6 Snow Leopard Mac OS X 10.7 Lion OS X 10.8 Mountain Lion OS X 10.9 Mavericks Red Hat® Enterprise Linux® 6 Desktop (32-bit) SUSE® Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 (32-bit) Ubuntu® 12.04 (32-bit) Red Hat® Enterprise Linux® 6 Desktop (64-bit) SUSE® Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 (64-bit) Ubuntu® 12.04 (64-bit) IMPORTANT: For information about the latest supported OS, refer to the Fuji Xerox web site.
Fonts	PCL/PostScript 3 Compatible: 80 fonts and 36 Symbol Sets
Emulation	PCL 6, PostScript 3 Compatible
Interface	Standard: Ethernet (100BASE-TX/10BASE-T), USB 2.0 (Hi-Speed), IEEE 802.11b/802.11g/802.11n

Scan Function

Type	Color scanner
Scan Resolution	1200 × 1200 dpi, 600 × 600 dpi, 300 × 300 dpi, 200 × 200 dpi
Scan Speed	Monochrome: 18 sheets/minute Color: 7 sheets/minute (600 dpi, Scan to PC) IMPORTANT: The scanning speed varies depending on documents.
Interface	Same as the Print Function
Scan to PC	Protocol: TCP/IP (SMB, FTP) Operating System: Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows Vista® (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 7 (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 8 (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 8.1 (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows Vista® (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 7 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 R2 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 8 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 8.1 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 R2 (64-bit) Mac OS X 10.5 Leopard Mac OS X 10.6 Snow Leopard Mac OS X 10.7 Lion OS X 10.8 Mountain Lion OS X 10.9 Mavericks IMPORTANT: For information about the latest supported OS, refer to the Fuji Xerox web site. File Format: Monochrome binary: TIFF (Compression type: MMR) PDF (v1.7) (Compression type: MMR) Gray scale/Full color: TIFF (Compression type: JPEG) JPEG (Compression type: –) PDF (v1.7) (Compression type: JPEG)
Scan to E-mail	Protocol: TCP/IP (SMTP, POP3) File Format: Monochrome binary: TIFF (Compression type: MMR) PDF (v1.7) (Compression type: MMR) Gray scale/Full color: TIFF (Compression type: JPEG) JPEG (Compression type: –) PDF (v1.7) (Compression type: JPEG)

Fax Function

Send Document Size	Document glass: Maximum: A4/Letter Automatic document feeder: Maximum: Legal
Recording Paper Size	Maximum: Legal Minimum: A4/Letter
Transmission Time	3 seconds IMPORTANT: When transmitting an A4 size 700-character document in the standard quality (8 × 3.85 lines/mm) and high speed mode (28.8 kbps or above: JBIG). This is only the transmission speed for image information and does not include the controlling time for the communication. Note that the actual transmission time depends on the content of documents, the machine that the recipient uses, and the status of the communication line.
Transmission Mode	ITU-T Super G3/G3 ECM/G3
Scan Resolution	Standard: 8 × 3.85 line/mm Fine: 8 × 7.7 line/mm Super Fine: 8 × 15.4 line/mm Ultra Fine: 16 × 15.4 line/mm
Coding Method	MH, MR, MMR, JBIG
Transmission Speed	G3:33.6/31.2/28.8/26.4/24.0/21.6/19.2/16.8/14.4/12.0/9.6/7.2/4.8/2.4kbps
Applicable Telephone Line	Telephone subscriber line, PBX, Fax communication (PSTN), G3-1 port

Direct Fax Function

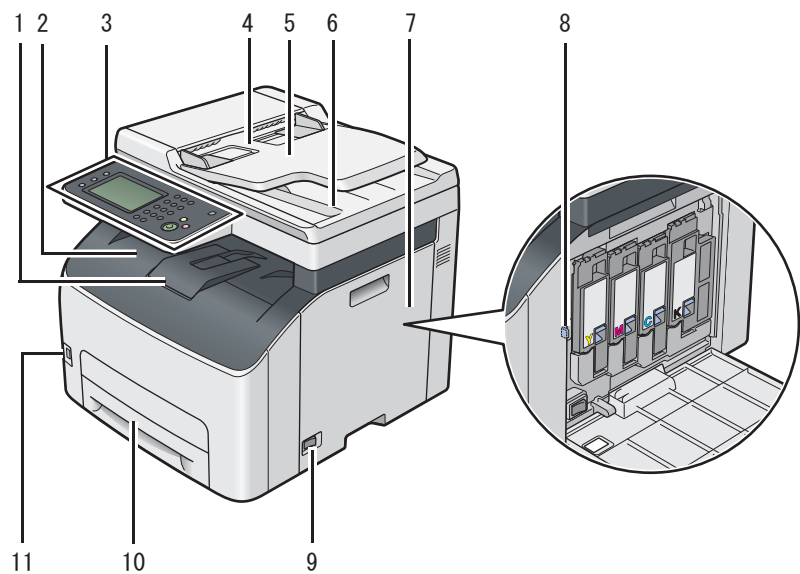
Document Size	A4, Letter, Folio, Legal
Transmission Resolution	Same as the Fax Function
Transmission Speed	Same as the Fax Function
Applicable Telephone Line	Same as the Fax Function
Operating System	Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows Vista® (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 7 (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 8 (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 8.1 (32-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows Vista® (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 7 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 R2 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 8 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows® 8.1 (64-bit) Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 R2 (64-bit) Mac OS X 10.5 Leopard Mac OS X 10.6 Snow Leopard Mac OS X 10.7 Lion OS X 10.8 Mountain Lion OS X 10.9 Mavericks IMPORTANT: For information about the latest supported OS, refer to the Fuji Xerox web site.

Basic Operation

- "Main Components" on page 25
- "Turning On/Off the Printer" on page 30
- "Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel" on page 32
- "Printing a Panel Settings Page" on page 34
- "Power Saver Mode" on page 35

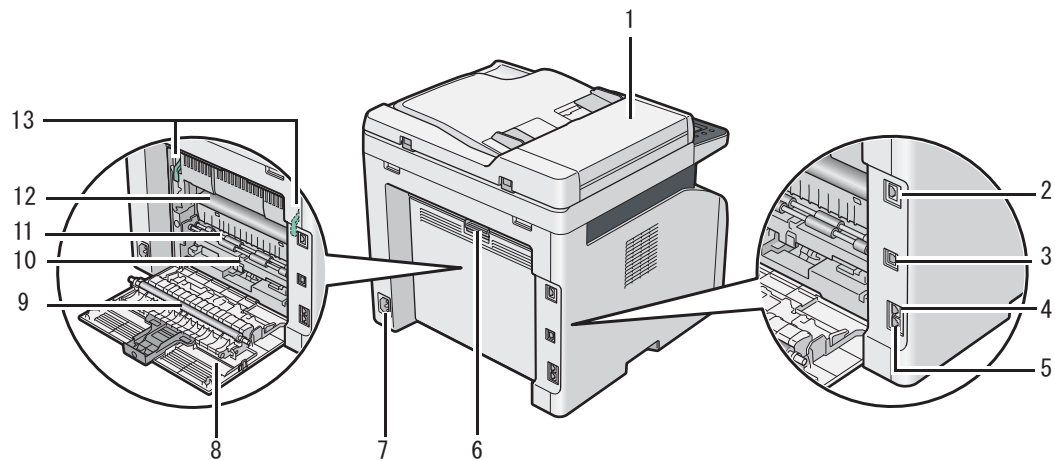
Main Components

■ Front View



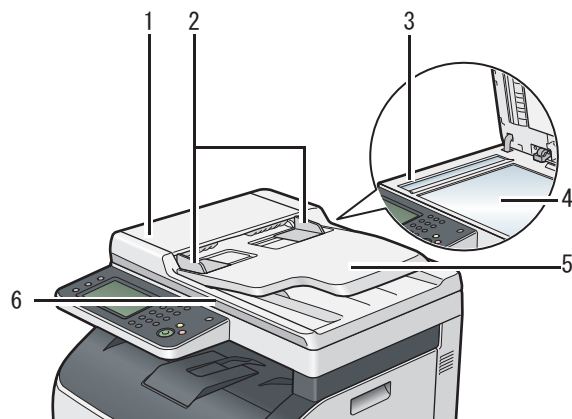
1	Output Tray Extension	2	Center Output Tray
3	Operator Panel	4	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)
5	Document Feeder Tray	6	Document Output Tray
7	Toner Access Cover	8	Print Head Cleaning Rod
9	Power Switch	10	Standard 150 Sheet Tray
11	USB Drive		

■ Rear View



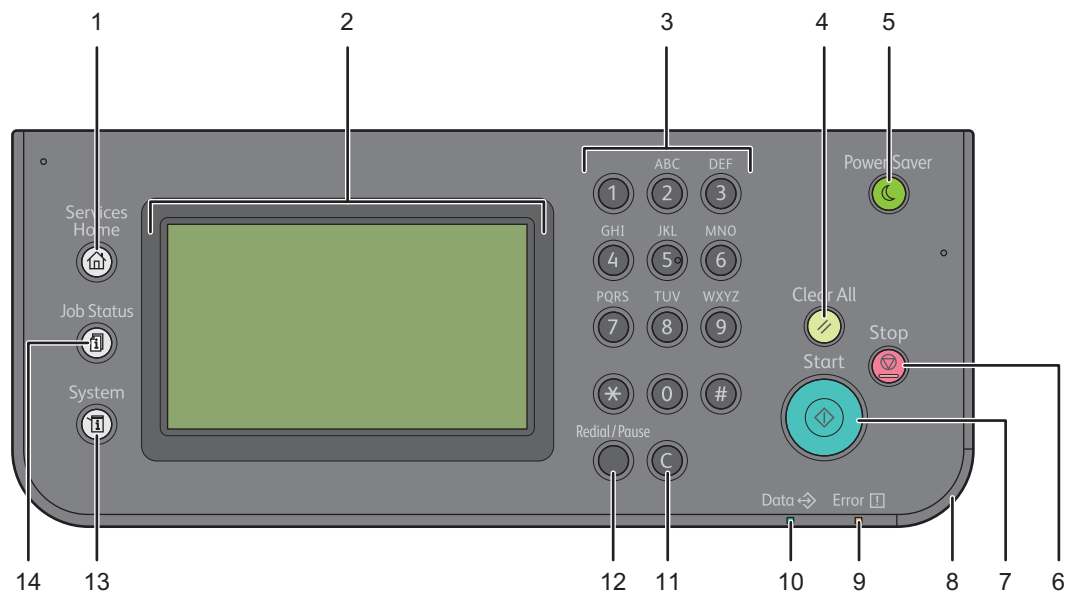
1	ADF Cover	2	Ethernet Port
3	USB Port	4	Wall Jack Connector
5	Phone Connector	6	Rear Cover Handle
7	Power Connector	8	Rear Cover
9	Transfer Roller	10	Paper Chute
11	Paper Feed Roller	12	Transfer Belt
13	Levers		

■ Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)



1	ADF Cover
2	Document Guides
3	ADF Glass
4	Document Glass
5	Document Feeder Tray
6	Document Cover

■ Operator Panel



1	(Services Home) button	Moves to the top service menu screen.
2	Touch panel	Specifies the settings by directly touching the screen. Displays various settings, instructions, and error messages.
3	Number Pad	Enters numbers and characters.
4	(Clear All) button	Resets the current setting, and returns to the top menu.
5	(Power Saver) button	Exits the power saver mode. When the machine is not used for a while, it enters the power saver mode to reduce power consumption. When the power saver mode is active, the button blinks.
6	(Stop) button	Cancels active or pending jobs.
7	(Start) button	Starts a job.
8	Status LED (Mobile)	Shows a blue light when the Wi-Fi Direct®, AirPrint, and Google Cloud Print™ connections are established, and blinks in certain conditions.
9	Status LED (Error)	Shows an amber light when an error occurs and a blinking amber light when an unrecoverable print error occurs.
10	Status LED (Data)	Shows a green light when the printer is ready and a blinking green light when data is being received.
11	C (Clear) button	Deletes numbers and characters.
12	Redial / Pause button	Re-dials a telephone number. Inserts a pause into a telephone number.
13	(System) button	Moves to the System screen. You can access various information and menus, check consumable levels, and print various types of reports and lists.
14	(Job Status) button	Moves to the Job Status screen. You can check or cancel active jobs and also access Secure Print and Secure Fax Receive .

NOTE:

- Moving to a different menu or returning to a previous screen cancels the current entry or setting. Make sure to save the current entry or setting.
- For details on how to use the number pad to enter numbers, see "Using the Number Pad" on page 257.

Touch Panel - Top Service Menu Screen

This section describes the fields and buttons on the top service menu screen which is displayed by pressing the  (**Services Home**) button. This is the default screen that appears when the printer is turned on.



• Message Field

Displays the printer status, error message, and IP address assigned to the printer.

• Toner Status Icon

Displays the condition of toner in 6 levels. (The toner level for each color: 100%, 80%, 60%, 40%, 20%, 0%)

Selecting this icon moves to the *Supplies* tab.

• Wireless LAN Connection Status Icon

Displays the intensity of wireless signal when wireless connection is established.

Selecting this icon moves to the *Wi-Fi Status* menu.

• Wi-Fi Direct Connection Status Icon

Displays the Wi-Fi Direct connection status when Wi-Fi Direct is enabled.

• Function Buttons

Displays the features for functions such as *Copy*, *E-mail*, *Scan To*, *Fax*, *Print from USB*, and *ID Card Copy*.

NOTE:

- Functions that are disabled do not appear on this screen. For details about enabling and disabling functions, see "Enabling the Panel Lock" on page 250.

Copy

You can set the features for the Copy function.

For more information, see "Copying" on page 125.

E-mail

You can scan documents and send the scanned data as an e-mail attachment.

For more information, see "Sending an E-mail With the Scanned Image" on page 165.

Scan To

You can set the features for the Scan function.

For more information, see "Scanning" on page 139.

Fax

You can set the features for the Fax function.

For more information, see "Faxing" on page 171.

Print from USB

You can set the features for the Print from USB function.

For more information, see "Direct Print Using the USB Storage Device" on page 109.

ID Card Copy

You can set the features for the ID Card Copy function.

For more information, see "Using the ID Card Copy" on page 137.

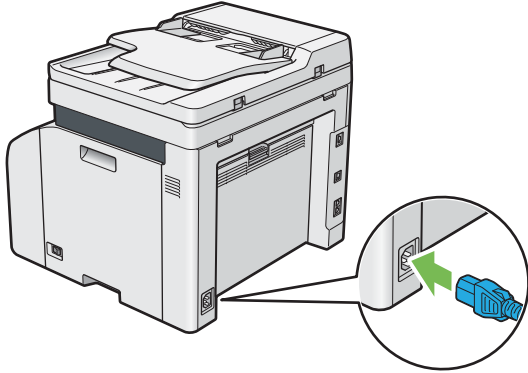
Turning On/Off the Printer

■ Turning On Your Printer

IMPORTANT:

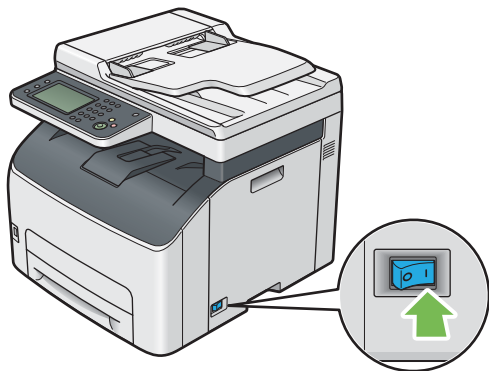
- Do not use extension cords or power strips.
- The printer should not be connected to an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) system.

- 1 Connect the power cord to the power connector on the rear of your printer (see "Rear View" on page 26).



- 2 Connect the other end of the cord to the power source.

- 3 Turn on the printer.



NOTE:

- When you turn on the printer for the first time, follow the on-screen instructions on the touch panel to configure the initial settings of your printer.

See also:

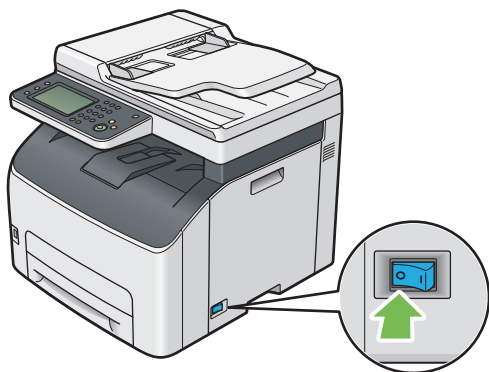
- "Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel" on page 32

■ Turning Off Your Printer

- 1 Turn off the printer.

NOTE:

- The data in the memory is cleared when the printer is turned off.



Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel

You need to set the printer language, country, clock date, time, and fax settings when you turn on the printer for the first time.

When you turn the printer on, the wizard screen to perform the initial setup appears on the touch panel. Follow the steps below to set the initial settings.

- 1 Turn on the printer.

The `Select Your Language` screen appears.

NOTE:

- If you do not start configuring the initial settings, `Ready` appears on the touch panel in three minutes. After that, you can set the following initial setup by enabling `Power On Wizard` on the touch panel or the CentreWare Internet Services if needed.
For more information on operator panel, see "Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 206.
For more information on the CentreWare Internet Services, see "CentreWare Internet Services" on page 38.

- 2 Select the desired language.

English
Simplified Chinese
Traditional Chinese
Korean

- 3 Select `Next`.

The `Date/Time` screen appears.

- 4 Select `Time Zone`.

- 5 Select the desired geographic region.

- 6 Select the desired time zone, and then select `OK`.

- 7 Select `Date`.

- 8 Select a data format from the menu displayed by selecting `Format`.

- 9 After selecting the box under `Year`, select `-` or `+`, or use the number pad to enter the desired value. Repeat this step to enter the desired value for `Month` and `Day`.

- 10 Select `OK`.

- 11 Select `Time`.

- 12 Select the time format from `12 Hour` or `24 Hour`. If you select `12 Hour`, select `AM` or `PM`.

- 13 After selecting the box under `Hours`, use the number pad to enter the desired value. Repeat this step to enter the desired value for `Minutes`.

- 14 Select `Next`.

The `Fax (Do you want to setup Fax Now?)` screen appears.

To set fax settings, select `Yes`, `Setup FAX` and follow the procedure below. To end the settings, select `No, I'll Do it later` and proceed to step 19.

- 15 Enter the fax number of the printer using the number pad.

- 16 Select `Region`.

- 17 Select the desired region.

The default paper size is automatically set when you select a region.

18 Select `Next`.

The `Setup Complete (Congratulation, setup is complete)` screen appears.

19 Select `Done`.

The printer automatically restarts after selecting `Done`.

Printing a Panel Settings Page

■ Using the Operator Panel

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select **Report / List**.
- 3 Select **Panel Settings**.
- 4 Select **Print**.
The Panel Settings page is printed.

■ Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

The following procedure uses Microsoft® Windows® 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility appears.

- 2 Click the **Printer Settings Report** tab.
- 3 Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **Reports** page is displayed.
- 4 Click **Panel Settings**.
The Panel Settings page is printed.

Power Saver Mode

The printer has a power saving feature which reduces power consumption during periods of inactivity. This feature operates in two modes: Low power mode and sleep mode. As delivered, the printer switches to the low power mode five minutes after the last job is finished. The printer then switches to the sleep mode after another six minutes of inactivity. When the printer is in the low power mode, the LCD backlight turns off. In the sleep mode, the  (**Power Saver**) button lights up. The display goes blank and nothing more appears.

The factory default settings of five minutes (Low Power Timer) and six minutes (Sleep Timer) are changeable within the range of 5 to 30 minutes (Low Power Timer) and 1 to 6 minutes (Sleep Timer). The printer returns to the ready-to-print state in about 28 seconds when re-activated.

■ Exiting the Power Saver Mode

The printer automatically exits the power saver mode when it receives a job from a computer. To manually exit the low power mode, press any button on the operator panel. To exit the sleep mode, press the  (**Power Saver**) button.

NOTE:

- When the printer is in the sleep mode, all buttons on the operator panel except for the  (**Power Saver**) button do not function. To use the buttons on the operator panel, press the  (**Power Saver**) button to exit the power saver mode.

See also:

- "Setting the Time for the Power Saver Mode" on page 254

Printer Management Software

Use the *Software Pack CD-ROM* that is shipped with your printer to install a combination of software programs, depending on your operating system.

- "Print and Scan Drivers" on page 37
- "CentreWare Internet Services" on page 38
- "Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)" on page 39
- "SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)" on page 40
- "Launcher (Windows Only)" on page 41
- "Address Book Editor" on page 42
- "Express Scan Manager" on page 43
- "Setup Disk Creation Tool (Windows Only)" on page 44
- "DocuWorks (Windows Only)" on page 45

Print and Scan Drivers

To access all of your printer's features, install the print and scan drivers from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.

- The print driver enables your computer and printer to communicate and provides access to your printer features.
- The scan driver enables you to scan images directly to your personal computer and place scanned images directly into an application via USB or the network.

The scan driver is installed with your print driver. It is available for Microsoft® Windows® and Mac OS X.

See also:

- "Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Windows" on page 60
- "Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Mac OS X" on page 83

CentreWare Internet Services

The CentreWare Internet Services is a hypertext transfer protocol (HTTP)-based web page service that is accessed through your web browser.

Using the CentreWare Internet Services you can confirm the printer status, and change the printer configuration options easily. Anyone on your network can access the printer using the CentreWare Internet Services. In administrative mode you can change the configuration of the printer, set up your fax directories, and manage your printer settings without leaving your computer.

NOTE:

- Users who are not given passwords by the administrator can still view the configuration settings in user mode. However, they cannot save or apply any changes to the current configuration and settings.

■ Creating an Administrative Password

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.
- 3 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 4 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **Administrator Settings**.
- 5 Select **Enabled** for **Administrator Mode**.
- 6 In the **Administrator Login ID** field, enter a name for the administrator.

NOTE:

- The default ID and password are "11111" and "x-admin" respectively.

- 7 In the **Administrator Password** and **Re-enter Password** fields, enter a password for the administrator.
- 8 In the **Maximum Login Attempts** field, enter the number of login attempts allowed.
Setting to 0 does not limit the number of login attempts.
- 9 Click **Apply**.
Your new password has been set and anyone with the administrator name and password can log in and change the printer configuration and settings.

Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

The Printer Setting Utility is installed with your print driver.

The Printer Setting Utility allows you to view or specify the system settings. You can also diagnose the system settings by using the Printer Setting Utility.

The Printer Setting Utility consists of the **Printer Settings Report**, **Printer Maintenance**, and **Diagnosis** tabs.

NOTE:

- The **Password** dialog box appears the first time you try to change settings on the Printer Setting Utility when `Panel Lock` is set on the printer. In this case, enter the password you specified, and click **OK** to apply the settings.

SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)

The SimpleMonitor is installed with your print driver.

You can check the printer status with the SimpleMonitor. Double-click the SimpleMonitor printer icon on the taskbar at the bottom right of the screen. The window to select a printer appears, which displays the printer name, printer connection ports, and printer status. Click one of the printer name listed on the window to select a printer. The **Printer Status** window appears. Check the column **Status** to know the current status of your printer.

The **Printer Status** window alerts you when there is a warning or when an error occurs, for example, when a paper jam occurs or toner is running low.

By default, the **Printer Status** window launches automatically when printing error occurs. You can specify the conditions for starting the **Printer Status** window in **Printer Status Window Properties**.

To change the pop-up settings for the **Printer Status** window:

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Right-click the SimpleMonitor printer icon on the taskbar at the bottom right of the screen.
- 2 Select **Printer Status Window Properties**.
The **Printer Status Window Properties** window appears.
- 3 Select the type of the pop-up and then click **OK**.

You can also check the toner level of your printer and the job information on the **Printer Status** window.

NOTE:

- To modify the SimpleMonitor settings, select **Settings** in the window to select a printer.

Launcher (Windows Only)

The Launcher is installed with your print driver.

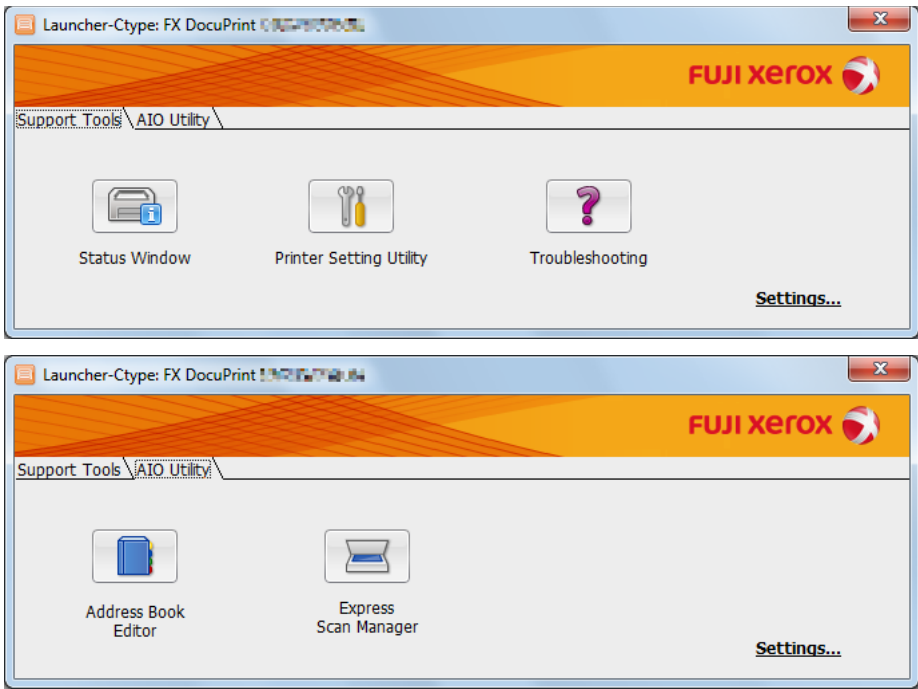
Using the **Launcher-Ctype** window, you can open the Printer Status window, Printer Setting Utility, Troubleshooting Guide, Address Book Editor, and Express Scan Manager.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

To open the **Launcher-Ctype** window:

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Launcher**.

The **Launcher-Ctype** window appears.



- 2 The **Launcher-Ctype** window provides the following buttons; **Status Window**, **Printer Setting Utility**, **Troubleshooting**, **Address Book Editor**, and **Express Scan Manager**.

To exit, click **X** (Close) at the top-right corner of the window.

For details, see the help for each application.

Status Window	Opens the Printer Status window. See also: • "SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)" on page 40
Printer Setting Utility	Opens the Printer Setting Utility. See also: • "Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)" on page 39
Troubleshooting	Opens the Troubleshooting Guide, which allows you to resolve issues by yourself.
Address Book Editor	Opens the Address Book Editor, which allows you to add and edit Address Book entries. See also: • "Address Book Editor" on page 42
Express Scan Manager	Opens the Express Scan Manager. See also: • "Express Scan Manager" on page 43

Address Book Editor

The Address Book Editor is installed with your print driver. It is available for Windows and Mac OS X.

The Address Book Editor provides a convenient interface for modifying the printer's Address Book entries. Using it you can add:

- Fax entries
- E-Mail entries
- Server entries

When you start the software, the Address Book Editor reads the printer's Address Book. You can add, edit, and delete entries. After making changes, you can save the updated Address Book to the printer or to your computer.

Express Scan Manager

The Express Scan Manager is installed with your print driver. It is available for Windows and Mac OS X.

The Express Scan Manager handles scan jobs sent from the printer to your computer via USB. When scan jobs are sent from the printer to the computer, the Express Scan Manager automatically manages the scan jobs.

Before scanning to your computer, start the Express Scan Manager and configure the output destination of the scanned image files.

Select the **Open the image file** check box to display scanned files saved in the specified destination after scanning.

NOTE:

- When you separately install the Express Scan Manager from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*, you also need to install the scan driver from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.

See also:

- "Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to Application" on page 141

Setup Disk Creation Tool (Windows Only)

The Setup Disk Creation Tool program located in the **MakeDisk** folder of the **Utilities** folder on the *Software Pack CD-ROM* and the print driver located on the *Software Pack CD-ROM* are used to create driver installation packages that contain custom driver settings. A driver installation package can contain a group of saved print driver settings and other data such as:

- Print orientation and multiple-up (document settings)
- Output color (graphic setting)

If you want to install the print driver with the same settings on multiple computers running on the same operating system, create a setup disk in a media or in a server on the network. Using the setup disk that you have created will reduce the amount of work required when installing the print driver.

- Install the print driver for your printer on the computer on which the setup disk is to be created.
- The setup disk can only be used on the operating system on which the disk was created or computers running the same operating system. Create a separate setup disk for each of the operating systems.

DocuWorks (Windows Only)

When installing the DocuWorks, run the appropriate EXE file in the *DocuWorks document handling software*.

Windows supports the DocuWorks and the DocuWorks Viewer Light.

The DocuWorks is available only for Windows.

NOTE:

- For more information on the DocuWorks, refer to the readme file on the *DocuWorks document handling software*.

Printer Connection and Software Installation

- "Overview of Printer Connection and Software Installation" on page 47
- "Connecting Your Printer" on page 49
- "Setting the IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)" on page 56
- "Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Windows" on page 60
- "Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Mac OS X" on page 83
- "Configuring Printer and Installing the Print Driver on Linux (CUPS)" on page 88

Overview of Printer Connection and Software Installation

Read this section to know the overall steps to complete the printer connection and software installation.

Select one of the following connection methods.

- USB connection
- Ethernet connection
- Wireless connection

NOTE:

- If the *Software Pack CD-ROM* is not available, you can download the latest driver from our web site:
<http://www.fujixeroxprinters.com/>
- To use this printer in a Linux[®] environment, you need to install a Linux driver. For more information on how to install and use these, see also "Configuring Printer and Installing the Print Driver on Linux (CUPS)" on page 88.

■ USB Connection

• For Microsoft[®] Windows[®]

- 1 Connect the printer and the computer with the USB cable.
Refer to "USB Connection" on page 51.
- 2 Install the driver software on the computer from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.
Refer to "Using Installer to Set Up Connection and Install Software" on page 61.

• For Mac OS X

- 1 Connect the printer and the computer with the USB cable.
Refer to "USB Connection" on page 51.
- 2 Install the driver software on the computer from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.
Refer to "Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Mac OS X" on page 83.

■ Ethernet Connection

• For Windows

- 1 Connect the printer to a wired network.
Refer to "Ethernet Connection" on page 51.
- 2 Set the printer's IP address.
 - If DHCP is available on your network, refer to "Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address" on page 56.
 - You can also manually set the printer's IP address by using the operator panel. Refer to "Assigning an IP Address Manually" on page 57.
- 3 Install the driver software on the computer from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.
Refer to "Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Windows" on page 60.

• For Mac OS X

- 1 Connect the printer to a wired network.
Refer to "Ethernet Connection" on page 51.
- 2 Set the printer's IP address.
 - If DHCP is available on your network, refer to "Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address" on page 56.
 - You can also manually set the printer's IP address by using the operator panel. Refer to "Assigning an IP Address Manually" on page 57.
- 3 Install the driver software on the computer from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.
Refer to "Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Mac OS X" on page 83.

■ Wireless Connection

• For Windows

- 1 Connect the printer to a wireless network.
Refer to "Wireless Connection" on page 52.

Perform the following steps as necessary.

If you set up wireless connection using the installer on the *Software Pack CD-ROM*, the following steps are not necessary.
- 2 Set the printer's IP address.
 - If DHCP is available on your network, refer to "Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address" on page 56.
 - You can also manually set the printer's IP address by using the operator panel. Refer to "Assigning an IP Address Manually" on page 57.
- 3 Install the driver software on the computer from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.
Refer to "Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Windows" on page 60.

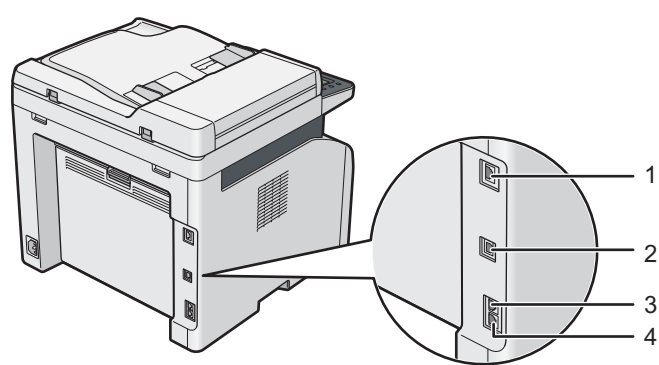
• For Mac OS X

- 1 Connect the printer to a wireless network.
Refer to "Wireless Connection" on page 52.
- 2 Set the printer's IP address.
 - If DHCP is available on your network, refer to "Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address" on page 56.
 - You can also manually set the printer's IP address by using the operator panel. Refer to "Assigning an IP Address Manually" on page 57.
- 3 Install the driver software on the computer from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.
Refer to "Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Mac OS X" on page 83.

Connecting Your Printer

To connect your printer to a computer or device, the following specification must be met for each of the connection type:

Connection Type	Connection Specifications
Ethernet	10 Base-T/100 Base-TX compatible
USB	USB2.0 compatible
Wireless	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g/802.11n
Wall Jack Connector	RJ11
Phone Connector	RJ11



1 Ethernet Port	
2 USB Port	
3 Wall Jack Connector	LINE 
4 Phone Connector	PHONE 

■ Available Features for Each Connection Type

Connect the printer via USB, Ethernet, or Wireless. A USB connection is a direct connection and is not used for networking. Ethernet and wireless connections are used for networking. Hardware and cabling requirements vary for the different connection methods. Ethernet cable and wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router are not included with your printer and must be purchased separately.

The available features for each connection type are shown in the following table.

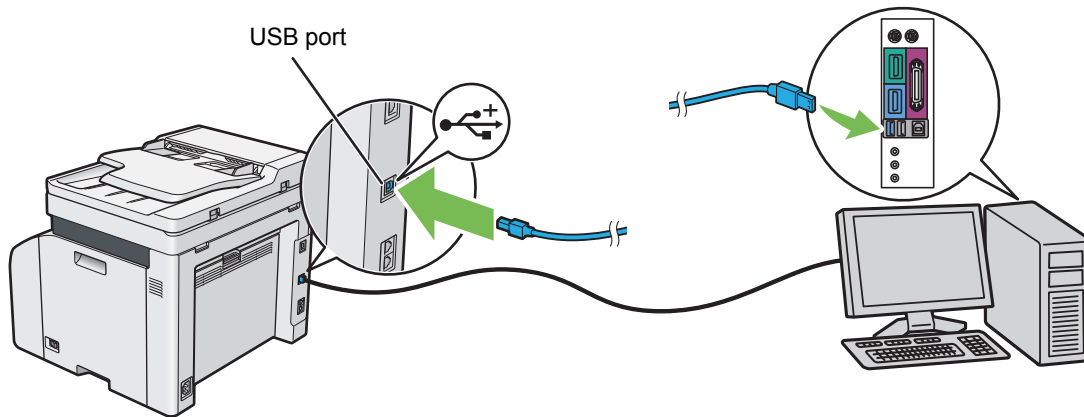
Connection Type	Available Feature
USB	• Instruct print jobs from a computer. • Scan an image into an application. • Scan an image to a folder on the computer. • Use the Address Book Editor to manage Address Book entries. • Use the Express Scan Manager to handle scan jobs sent from the printer to your computer. • Use the Printer Setting Utility to view, specify or diagnose the system settings. (Windows only) • Use the SimpleMonitor to check the printer status. (Windows only)
Ethernet	• Instruct print jobs from a computer on the network. • Scan an image to a computer on the network. • Scan an image to an FTP server. • Scan to e-mail. • Use the CentreWare Internet Services to view the printer status or specify the printer settings. • Use the Printer Setting Utility to view, specify or diagnose the system settings. (Windows only) • Use the SimpleMonitor to check the printer status. (Windows only)
Wireless	• Instruct print jobs from a computer on the network. • Scan an image to a computer on the network. • Scan an image to an FTP server. • Scan to e-mail. • Use the CentreWare Internet Services to view the printer status or specify the printer settings. • Use the Printer Setting Utility to view, specify or diagnose the system settings. (Windows only) • Use the SimpleMonitor to check the printer status. (Windows only)

■ Connecting Printer to Your Computer

USB Connection

To connect the printer to a computer via USB:

- 1 Make sure that the printer is turned off and unplugged from the power source.
- 2 Connect the smaller USB connector into the USB port at the rear of the printer and the other end to a USB port of the computer.



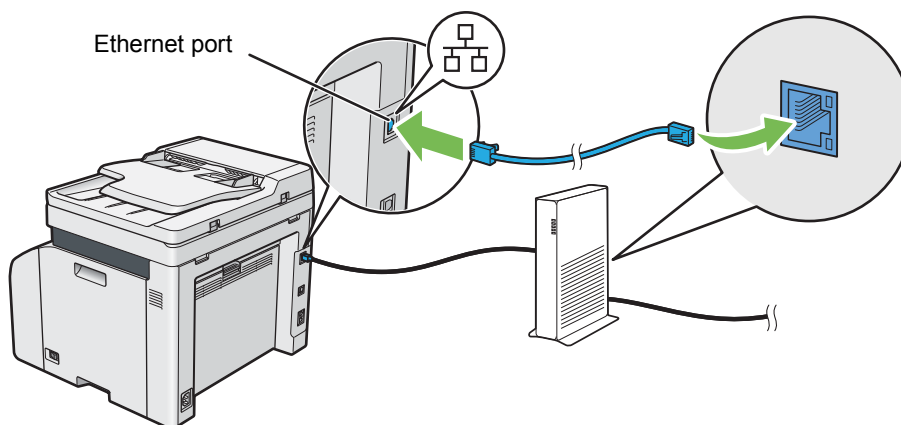
NOTE:

- Do not connect the printer USB cable to the USB slot available on the keyboard.

Ethernet Connection

To connect the printer to a computer via Ethernet:

- 1 Make sure that the printer is turned off and all cables have been disconnected.
- 2 Connect one end of the Ethernet cable into the Ethernet port at the rear of the printer, and the other end to an Ethernet port of a router or hub.



NOTE:

- Connect the Ethernet cable, only if you need to setup a wired connection. Connecting the Ethernet cable stops some features or functions for Wireless network.

Wireless Connection

This section describes how to connect the printer to a computer via wireless network.

Confirm that the Ethernet cable has been disconnected from the printer and the status LED (**Mobile**) is blinking before configuring the wireless connection.

IMPORTANT:

- The Wireless LAN feature is not available in all locations. Please check with your local Fuji Xerox representative for availability of wireless in your location.
- If you are using a method other than Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS) to configure your wireless network settings, be sure to get the SSID and security information from a system administrator before starting the setup procedure.
- Be sure to configure necessary settings on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router before starting the printer setup. For information on the access point or router settings, refer to the manual supplied with the product.

The specifications of wireless setting function are described below:

Item	Specification
Connectivity	Wireless
Connectivity Standard	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g/802.11n compliant
Bandwidth	2.4 GHz
Data Transfer Rate	IEEE 802.11b mode: 11, 5.5, 2, 1 Mbps IEEE 802.11g mode: 54, 48, 36, 24, 18, 12, 9, 6 Mbps IEEE 802.11n mode: 65 Mbps
Security	64 (40-bit key)/128 (104-bit key) WEP, WPA™-PSK (TKIP, AES)* ¹ , WPA2™-PSK (AES)* ¹ (IEEE 802.1x attestation function of WPA 1x non-corresponds), Mixed Mode PSK
Certifications	Wi-Fi®, Wi-Fi Direct®, WPA2.0 (Personal)
Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS)* ²	Push Button Configuration (PBC), Personal Identification Number (PIN)

*¹ WPA stands for Wi-Fi Protected Access®.

*² WPS 2.0 compliant. WPS 2.0 works on access points with the following encryption types: Mixed Mode PSK, WPA-PSK-AES, WPA2-PSK-AES, Open (No Security)

You can select a method to configure a wireless setting from the following:

Using the installer on the <i>Software Pack CD-ROM</i> (Windows Only) (Recommended for initial setup) Refer to "Launching the FX Printer Installation Screen" on page 61.
WPS-PBC (Operator Panel Menu)* ¹ Refer to "WPS-PBC" on page 53.
WPS-PIN* ² Refer to "WPS-PIN" on page 53.
Auto SSID Setup Refer to "Auto SSID Setup" on page 54.
Manual SSID Setup Refer to "Manual SSID Setup" on page 55.

*¹ WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by starting WPS-PBC on the printer with the operator panel menu, and then pressing the button provided on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS-PBC.

*² WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by entering PIN assignments in the printer and computer. This setting, performed through access point, is available only when the access point of your wireless router supports WPS.

• WPS-PBC

You can start WPS-PBC from the operator panel.

NOTE:

- WPS-PBC is available only when the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router supports WPS-PBC.
- Before starting WPS-PBC, confirm the position of the WPS button (button name may vary) on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router. For information about the WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router, refer to the manual supplied with the product.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the `Tools` tab.
- 3 Select `Admin Settings`.
- 4 Select `Network`.
- 5 Select `Wireless`.
- 6 Select `WPS Setup`.
- 7 Select `Push Button Configuration`.
- 8 Select `Start Configuration`.
- 9 Confirm that `Setting WPS` is displayed, and press the button on the wireless LAN access point, within two minutes of the step 8 operation.

NOTE:

- For details about WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point, refer to the manual supplied with the wireless LAN access point.

When WPS is successful, wireless connection is established and setup for wireless LAN is complete.

• WPS-PIN

The PIN code of WPS-PIN can only be configured from the operator panel.

NOTE:

- WPS-PIN is available only when the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router supports WPS-PIN.
- For the WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router, refer to the manual supplied with the product.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the `Tools` tab.
- 3 Select `Admin Settings`.
- 4 Select `Network`.
- 5 Select `Wireless`.
- 6 Select `WPS Setup`.
- 7 Select `PIN Code`.
- 8 Write down the displayed 8-digit PIN code or select `Print PIN Code`. The PIN code is printed.
- 9 Select `Start Configuration`.

- 10 Confirm that `Setting WPS` is displayed, and enter the PIN code displayed on step 8 into the web page of the wireless LAN access point.

NOTE:

- For details about the WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point, refer to the manual supplied with the wireless LAN access point.

When WPS is successful, wireless connection is established and setup for wireless LAN is complete.

• Auto SSID Setup

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.

- 2 Select the `Tools` tab.

- 3 Select `Admin Settings`.

- 4 Select `Network`.

- 5 Select `Wireless`.

- 6 Select `Wireless Setup Wizard`.

The printer automatically searches the access points on wireless network.

- 7 Select the desired access point.

If the desired access point does not appear, see "Manual SSID Setup" on page 55.

NOTE:

- Some hidden SSID may not be displayed. If the SSID is not detected turn on SSID broadcast from the access point.

- 8 Select `Next`.

- 9 Enter the passphrase or WEP key.

When the encryption type of the selected access point is WPA2 or Mixed in step 7:

- a Select the `Enter Password` text box, and then enter the passphrase.

- b Select `OK`.

When the encryption type of the selected access point is WEP in step 7:

- a Select the `Enter Key` text box, and then enter the WEP key.

- b Select `OK`.

NOTE:

- A passphrase is an encryption key for WPA and WPA2 encryption which consists of 8 to 63 alphanumeric (and 64 hexadecimal) characters. It may be described as a key on some access points or routers. For details, refer to the manual supplied with the access point or router.

When the Auto SSID Setup is successful, wireless connection is established and setup for wireless LAN is complete.

• Manual SSID Setup

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab.
- 3 Select **Admin Settings**.
- 4 Select **Network**.
- 5 Select **Wireless**.
- 6 Select **Wireless Setup Wizard**.
- 7 Select the **Manual SSID Setup** check box, and then select **Next**.
- 8 Enter the SSID, and then select **Next**.
- 9 Select the network mode from **Infrastructure** or **Ad-hoc** depending on your environment, and then select **Next**.
- 10 Select the encryption type from **Mixed mode PSK**, **WPA2-PSK-AES**, or **WEP**.

IMPORTANT:

- Be sure to use one of the supported encryption types to protect your network traffic.

NOTE:

- If you have selected **Ad-hoc** for the network mode, **WEP** is the encryption type.

To use **Mixed mode PSK** or **WPA2-PSK-AES** encryption:

- a Select the desired encryption type.
- b Select the **Enter Password** text box, and then enter the passphrase.
- c Select **OK**.

NOTE:

- A passphrase is an encryption key for WPA and WPA2 encryption which consists of 8 to 63 alphanumeric (and 64 hexadecimal) characters. It may be described as a key on some access points or routers. For details, refer to the manual supplied with the access point or router.

To use **WEP** encryption:

- a Select **WEP**.
- b Select the **Enter WEP Key** text box, and then enter the WEP key.
- c Select **Transmit Key**, and then select the desired transmit key from **WEP Key 1** to **WEP Key 4**.
- d Select **OK**.

When the Manual SSID Setup is successful, wireless connection is established and setup for wireless LAN is complete.

Setting the IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)

NOTE:

- To set an IP address for IPv6 in Dual Stack mode, use the CentreWare Internet Services. For more information, refer to the online Help on the CentreWare Internet Services. To display the CentreWare Internet Services in an IPv6 network, use a link local address. The printer's link local address is listed in the System Settings page. For details, see "Printing a System Settings Page" on page 122.

■ Printer's TCP/IP and IP Addresses

If your computer is on a large network, contact your network administrator for the appropriate TCP/IP addresses and additional system settings information.

If you are creating your own small local area network or connecting the printer directly to your computer using network, follow the procedure for automatically setting the printer's IP address.

Computers and printers primarily use TCP/IP protocols to communicate over network. With TCP/IP protocols, each printer and computer must have a unique IP address. It is important that the addresses are similar, but not the same; only the last digit needs to be different. For example, your printer can have the address 192.0.2.1 while your computer has the address 192.0.2.2. Another device can have the address 192.0.2.3.

Many networks have a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server. A DHCP server automatically programs an IP address into every computer and printer on the network that is configured to use DHCP. A DHCP server is built into most cable and Digital Subscriber Line (DSL) routers. If you use a cable or DSL router, see your router's documentation for information on IP addressing.

■ Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address

The DHCP and AutoIP protocols are available for dynamically setting the printer's IP address. They are enabled by default in your printer.

You can turn on/off both protocols using the operator panel or the CentreWare Internet Services.

NOTE:

- You can print a report that includes the printer's IP address. For more information, refer to "Printing a System Settings Page" on page 122.

Using the Operator Panel

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab.
- 3 Select **Admin Settings**.
- 4 Select **Network**.
- 5 Select **Ethernet** or **Wireless**.
- 6 Select **TCP/IP**.
- 7 Select **Get IP Address**.
- 8 Select **DHCP/AutoIP**, and then select **OK**.

Using the CentreWare Internet Services

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.
- 3 Select **Properties**.
- 4 Select **TCP/IP** from the **Protocol Settings** folder on the left navigation panel.
- 5 In the **IP Address Mode** field under **IPv4**, select the **DHCP/AutoIP** option.
- 6 Click **Apply**.
- 7 Click **Reboot Machine** to restart the printer.

■ Assigning an IP Address Manually

NOTE:

- Assigning an IP address is considered as an advanced function and is normally performed by a system administrator.
- Depending on the address class, the range of the IP address assigned may be different. On Class A, for example, an IP address in the range from 0.0.0.0 to 127.255.255.255 will be assigned. For assignment of IP addresses, contact your system administrator.

You can assign the IP address by using the operator panel, the Printer Setting Utility, or the CentreWare Internet Services.

For Windows, you can also assign the IP address to the printer using the installer on the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.

Using the Operator Panel

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab.
- 3 Select **Admin Settings**.
- 4 Select **Network**.
- 5 Select **Ethernet** or **Wireless**.
- 6 Select **TCP/IP**.
- 7 Select **Get IP Address**.
- 8 Select **Panel**, and then select **OK**.
- 9 Confirm that **Settings Become Effective After Restart** appears, and then select **Close**.
- 10 Select **IP Address**.
The cursor is located at the first digit of the IP address.
- 11 Enter the value of the IP address using the number pad.
- 12 Select .
The cursor moves to the next digit.
- 13 Repeat steps 11 to 12 to set all digits in the IP address, and then select **OK**.
- 14 Confirm that **Settings Become Effective After Restart** appears, and then select **Close**.
- 15 Select **Subnet Mask**.
The cursor is located at the first digit of the subnet mask.

- 16 Enter the value of the subnet mask using the number pad.
- 17 Select .
The cursor moves to the next digit.
- 18 Repeat steps 16 to 17 to set the subnet mask, and then select OK.
- 19 Confirm that `Settings Become Effective After Restart.` appears, and then select Close.
- 20 Select `Gateway Address`.
The cursor is located at the first digit of the gateway address.
- 21 Enter the value of the gateway address using the number pad.
- 22 Select .
The cursor moves to the next digit.
- 23 Repeat steps 21 to 22 to set the gateway address, and then select OK.
- 24 Make sure that the message `Settings Become Effective After Restart.` appears, and then select Close.
- 25 Turn off and turn on the printer.

See also:

- "Operator Panel" on page 27

Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility appears.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **TCP/IP Settings** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **TCP/IP Settings** page is displayed.
- 4 Select **Panel** from **IP Address Mode**, and then enter the values in **IP Address**, **Subnet Mask**, and **Gateway Address**.
- 5 Click **Restart printer to apply new settings** to take effect.

Using the Installer on the Software Pack CD-ROM (Windows Only)

You can assign the IP address to the printer when setting up the printer with the installer on the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.

When you use the Ethernet or the manual Wireless setup method, and `Get IP Address` is set to `DHCP/AutoIP` on the operator panel menu, the installer detects the printer by the automatically assigned IP address. You can modify the assigned IP address to the desired IP address by clicking **Advanced** on the **Configure Printer** screen while in the setup process.

See also:

- "Printing a System Settings Page" on page 122

The IP address is assigned to your printer. To verify the setting, display the web browser on any computer connected to the network and enter the IP address into the address bar on the browser. If the IP address is set up correctly, the CentreWare Internet Services is displayed in your browser.

■ Verifying the IP Settings

You can confirm the settings by printing the System Settings page or using the ping command.

Printing the System Settings Page

- 1 Print the System Settings page.

See also:

- "Printing a System Settings Page" on page 122

- 2 Look under the **IPv4** heading of **TCP/IP** on the **Wired Network** or **Wireless Network** section of the System Settings page to confirm that the IP address, subnet mask and gateway address are appropriate.

If the IP address is **0.0.0.0** (the factory default) or **169.254.xx.xx**, an IP address has not been assigned.

If the IP address is not resolved automatically, see "Assigning an IP Address Manually" on page 57.

Using the Ping Command

To verify if the printer is active on the network, run the ping command in your computer.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Accessories** → **Run**.
- 2 Enter "cmd", and then click **OK**.
A **Command Prompt** window is displayed.
- 3 Enter "ping xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx" (xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx is the IP address of your printer), and then press the **Enter** key.
Receiving the reply from the printer IP address means that the printer is appropriately connected to the network.

Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Windows

■ Identifying Print Driver Pre-install Status (for Network Connection Setup)

Before installing the print driver on your computer, check the IP address of your printer and change the firewall settings.

Checking the IP Address for Your Printer

- 1 Print the System Settings page.

See also:

- "Printing a System Settings Page" on page 122

- 2 Confirm the IP address next to **IP Address** under **Wired Network** or **Wireless Network** on the System Settings page.

If the IP address is **0.0.0.0**, wait for a few minutes to resolve the IP address automatically, and then print the System Settings page again.

If the IP address is not resolved automatically, see "Assigning an IP Address Manually" on page 57.

Changing the Firewall Settings Before Installing Your Printer

You may need to change the firewall settings before installing the printer software. Contact your network administrator for more information.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Insert the *Software Pack CD-ROM* into your computer.
- 2 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
- 3 Click **System and Security**.
- 4 Click **Allow a program through Windows Firewall**.
- 5 Click **Change settings**.
- 6 Click **Allow another program**.
- 7 Click **Browse**.
- 8 Enter "D:\setup.exe" (in case your optical disk drive is D) in the **File name** text box, and then click **Open**.
- 9 Click **Add**.
- 10 Click **OK**.

■ Using Installer to Set Up Connection and Install Software

NOTE:

- The following procedure sets up printer connection and then install the drivers and software. If you have already established printer connection, see "Using Installer to Install Software" on page 64 to install the print driver and software immediately.

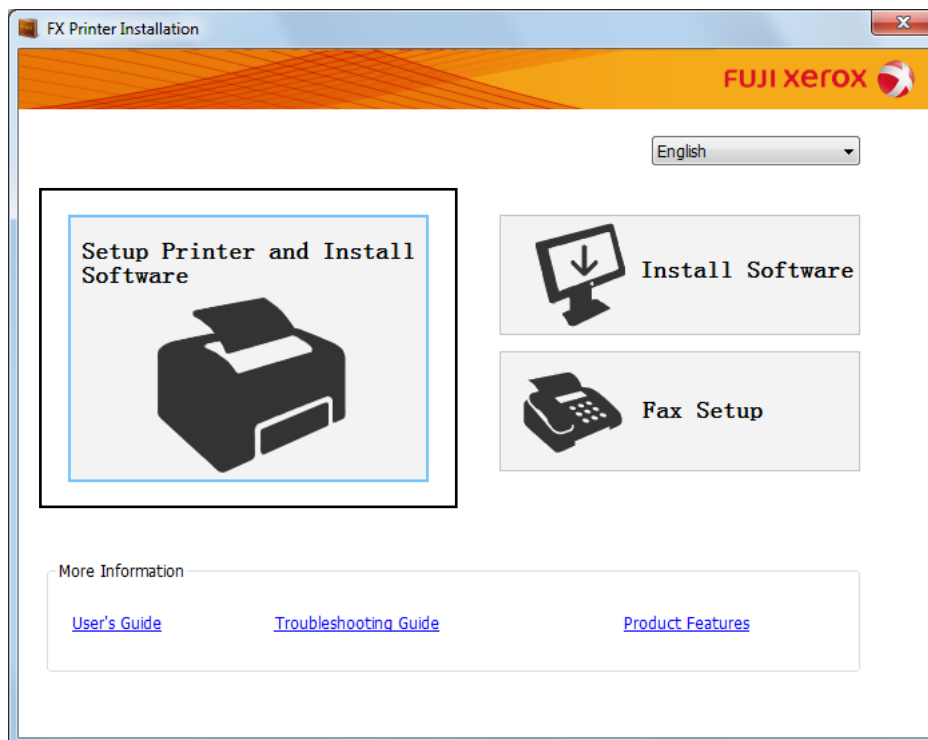
Launching the FX Printer Installation Screen

- 1 Insert the *Software Pack CD-ROM* into your computer to start the **FX Printer Installation** screen.

NOTE:

- For Windows 8, Windows 8.1, Windows Server® 2012, and Windows Server 2012 R2, click the message displayed on the upper right corner of the screen, and then select **Run setup.exe**.
- If the CD does not automatically launch, perform the following steps.
 - a For Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2008 R2, click **Start** → **Run**.
For Windows Vista® and Windows 7, click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Accessories** → **Run**.
For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012, right-click on the **Start** screen and click **All apps** → **Run**.
For Windows 8.1 and Windows Server 2012 R2, click (⬇) on the **Start** screen → **Run**.
 - b Enter "D:\setup.exe" (in case your optical disk drive is D), and then click **OK**.

- 2 Click **Setup Printer and Install Software**.



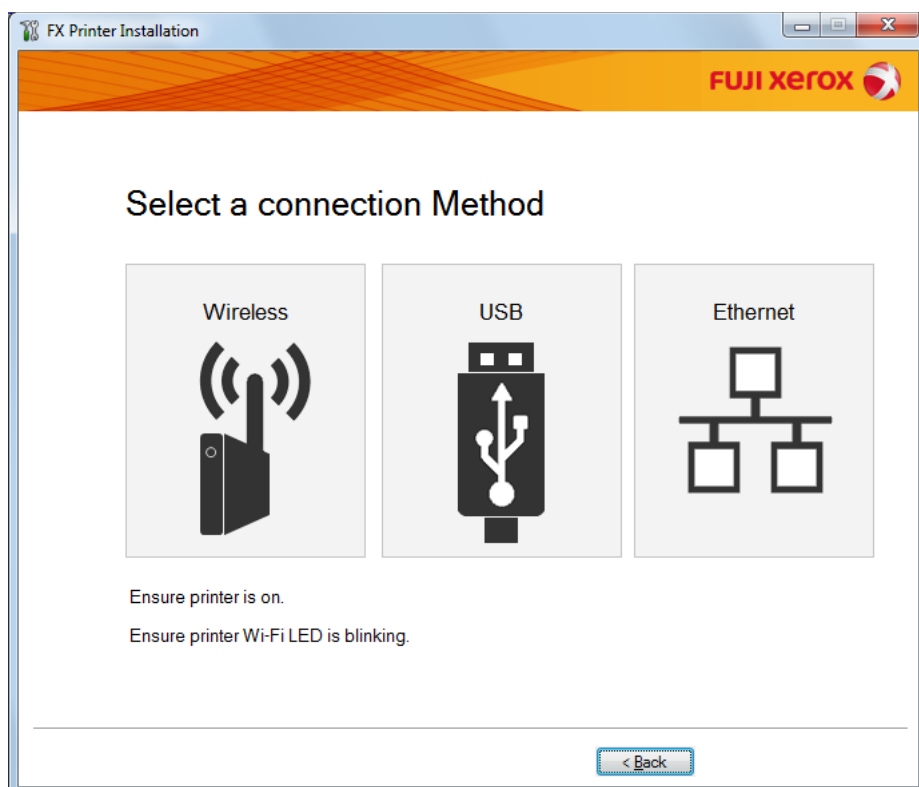
- 3 If you agree to the terms of the **License Agreement**, choose **I accept the terms of the license agreement**, and then click **Next**.

4 Select a connection method to the printer.

For the wireless connection, see "Configuring Wireless Connection Settings" on page 62.

For the USB connection, see "Configuring USB Connection Settings" on page 63.

For the Ethernet connection, see "Configuring Ethernet Connection Settings" on page 63.



Configuring Wireless Connection Settings

The installer software connects the printer and installs the required drivers and software.

The connection procedure varies depending on how your network and computer are set up.

- 1** Confirm that the printer is turned on and the status LED (**Mobile**) is blinking.
- 2** Click **Wireless** on the **Select a connection Method** screen.
- 3** Follow the instructions displayed on the screen.
 - If the software detects your network and printer, the **SSID** and **Printer Name** will be displayed. Confirm the **SSID** and **Printer Name** and then click **Next**.
 - If the WPS setup screen is displayed, follow the steps displayed on the screen.
 - In case the WPS button is not available on your router or you want to set up manually, click **Manual settings** and follow the instructions displayed on the screen.
- 4** Click **Finish** to exit the wizard when the **Ready to Print!** screen appears. If necessary, click **Print Test Page** to verify installation.

Configuring USB Connection Settings

- 1 Confirm that the USB cable is connected to the computer and the printer, and the printer is turned on.

NOTE:

- For Windows Vista, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Server 2008, if **Found New Hardware Wizard** appears, click **Cancel**.

- 2 Click **USB** on the **Select a connection Method** screen.

The Plug and Play installation starts and the required driver and software are automatically installed.

- 3 Click **Finish** to exit the wizard when the **Ready to Print!** screen appears. If necessary, click **Print Test Page** to verify installation.

Configuring Ethernet Connection Settings

- 1 Click **Ethernet** on the **Select a connection Method** screen.

- 2 Connect the Ethernet cable to the printer and turn on the printer, and then click **Next**.

- 3 Select a printer you want to install from the **Printer** list, and then click **Next**.

If the target printer is not displayed on the **Printer** list, click  to refresh the list or click **Enter IP Address** to add a printer manually.

In **Enter IP Address**, enter the assigned IP address to the printer manually, and then click **OK**.

NOTE:

- If the target printer is not displayed on the list, ensure Ethernet cable is correctly inserted to the printer and the router, and also confirm the printer IP address is properly appointed.

- 4 Confirm **IP Mode** and **Type**, and then click **Next**.

If you want to change the printer's IP address settings, click **Advanced** and configure the items on the **Configure Printer** screen. Especially if you want to set up the printer with fixed IP, select **Use Manual Address** from **Type**.

- 5 Check and configure the printer information such as a printer name, default printer/scanner settings, printer sharing setting, specify whether to install the fax driver, and then click **Next**.

- 6 Select the check box of the software and documentation you want to install, and then click **Install**.

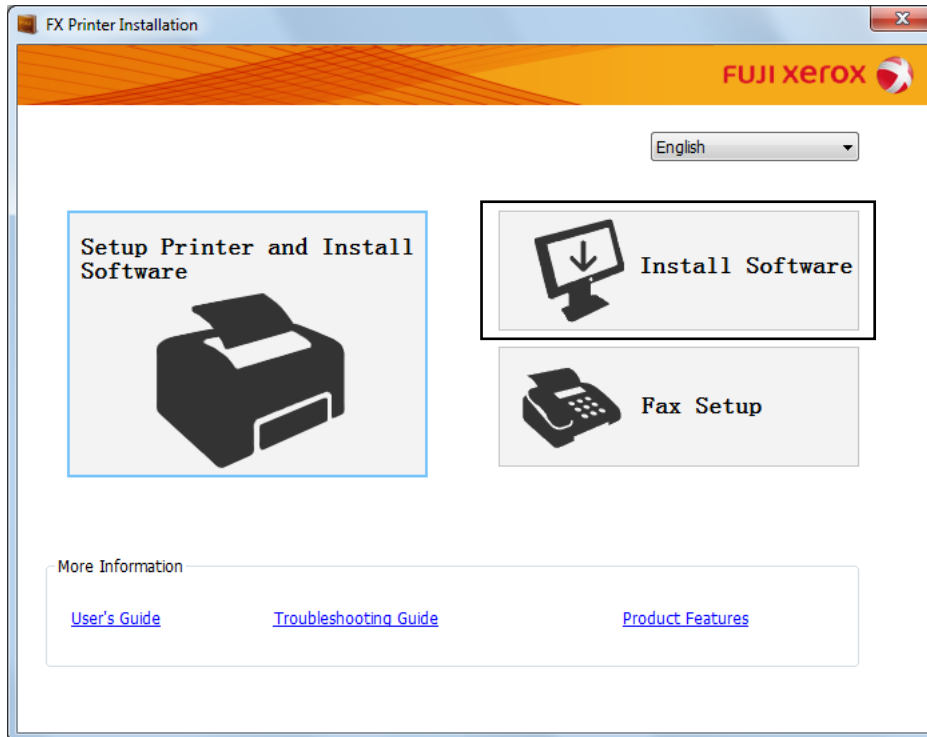
- 7 Click **Finish** to exit the wizard when the **Ready to Print!** screen appears. If necessary, click **Print Test Page** to verify installation.

■ Using Installer to Install Software

If the printer connection via USB/Ethernet/Wireless is already configured and you want to perform the driver and software installation only, follow the procedure below.

If you have executed the steps in "Using Installer to Set Up Connection and Install Software" on page 61, the following procedure is not necessary.

1 Click **Install Software**.



2 If you agree to the terms of the **License Agreement**, choose **I accept the terms of the license agreement**, and then click **Next**.

3 Choose an installation type, and then click **Next**.

For the printer connected to your computer using the USB cable, select **Personal Installation**.

For the printer connected to a wired or wireless network, select **Network Installation**.

4 Follow the instructions displayed on the screen to complete the installation.

■ Installing the XML Paper Specification (XPS) Print Driver

This section describes how to install the XML Paper Specification (XPS) print driver using the Windows **Add Printer** wizard.

NOTE:

- The XML Paper Specification (XPS) driver is supported on Windows Vista and later operating systems.
- To print with the XML Paper Specification (XPS) driver, the following components are required on your computer.

For Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition:

- .Net Framework 4 or 4.5
- Visual C++[®] Redistributable Packages for Visual Studio[®] 2012

For Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2012, Windows 8.1, Windows 8.1 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2012 R2:

- Visual C++ Redistributable Packages for Visual Studio 2012

Getting the Driver File

- 1 Insert the *Software Pack CD-ROM* into your computer.
- 2 Extract the zip file in the following path to your desired location.

D:\Drivers\XPS\Win_7Vista

D:\Drivers\XPS\Win_8

(in case your optical disk drive is D)

NOTE:

- XPS stands for XML Paper Specification.

Installing the Print Driver

• USB Connection Setup

Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer**.
- 3 Click **Add a local printer**.
- 4 Select the port connected to your printer, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 6 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "Getting the Driver File" on page 65.
- 7 Click **Open**.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Select your printer name, and then click **Next**.
- 10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box.
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box displayed under the **Printer name**.

- 11 Click **Next**.
Installation starts.
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

NOTE:

- If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

- 12 Upon completion of the driver installation, click **Print a test page** to verify installation.

- 13 Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

NOTE:

- You must log in as an administrator.

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer**.
- 3 Click **Add a local printer**.
- 4 Select the port connected to your printer, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 6 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "Getting the Driver File" on page 65.
- 7 Click **Open**.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Select your printer name, and then click **Next**.
- 10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box.
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
- 11 Click **Next**.
Installation starts.
- 12 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**.
If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
- 13 Click **Next**.
- 14 Upon completion of the driver installation, click **Print a test page** to verify installation.
- 15 Click **Finish**.

Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer**.
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.

NOTE:

- If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

- 3 Click **Add a local printer**.
- 4 Select the port connected to your printer, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 6 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "Getting the Driver File" on page 65.
- 7 Click **Open**.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Select your printer name, and then click **Next**.
- 10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.
Installation starts.
- 11 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**.
If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
- 12 Click **Next**.
- 13 To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
- 14 Upon completion of the driver installation, click **Print a test page** to verify installation.
- 15 Click **Finish**.

Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows 8.1, Windows 8.1 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2012, or Windows Server 2012 R2

- 1 On the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**.
 - 2 Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2) → **Devices and Printers**.
 - 3 Click **Add a printer**.
 - 4 Click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
 - 5 Select **Add a local printer or network printer with manual settings**, and then click **Next**.
 - 6 Select the port connected to your printer, and then click **Next**.
 - 7 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
 - 8 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "Getting the Driver File" on page 65.
 - 9 Click **Open**.
 - 10 Click **OK**.
 - 11 Select your printer name, and then click **Next**.
 - 12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.
Installation starts.
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.
- NOTE:**
- If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 13 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**.
If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.

- 14 Click **Next**.
- 15 To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
- 16 Upon completion of the driver installation, click **Print a test page** to verify installation.
- 17 Click **Finish**.

• Network Connection Setup

Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
 - 2 Click **Add a printer**.
 - 3 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
 - 4 Select a printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
If you have selected your printer, go to step 7.
If you have clicked **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 5.
 - 5 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.
 - 6 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address in the **Hostname or IP address** box, and then click **Next**.
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.
- NOTE:**
- If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 7 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
 - 8 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "Getting the Driver File" on page 65.
 - 9 Click **Open**.
 - 10 Click **OK**.
 - 11 Select your printer name, and then click **Next**.
 - 12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box.
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
 - 13 Click **Next**.
Installation starts.
 - 14 Upon completion of the driver installation, click **Print a test page** to verify installation.
 - 15 Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

NOTE:

- You must log in as an administrator.
- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
 - 2 Click **Add a printer**.
 - 3 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

- 4 Select a printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
If you have selected your printer, go to step 7.
If you have clicked **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 5.
 - 5 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.
 - 6 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address in the **Hostname or IP address** box, and then click **Next**.
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.
- NOTE:**
- If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 7 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
 - 8 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "Getting the Driver File" on page 65.
 - 9 Click **Open**.
 - 10 Click **OK**.
 - 11 Select your printer name, and then click **Next**.
 - 12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box.
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
 - 13 Click **Next**.
Installation starts.
 - 14 If you do not want your printer shared, select **Do not share this printer**. Otherwise, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
 - 15 Click **Next**.
 - 16 Upon completion of the driver installation, click **Print a test page** to verify installation.
 - 17 Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer**.
- 3 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
- 4 Select a printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

NOTE:

- If you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, the **Find a printer by name or TCP/IP address** screen appears. Find your printer on the screen.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

NOTE:

- If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

- 5 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 6 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "Getting the Driver File" on page 65.
- 7 Click **Open**.

- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Select your printer name, and then click **Next**.
- 10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.
Installation starts.
- 11 If you do not want your printer shared, select **Do not share this printer**. Otherwise, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
- 12 Click **Next**.
- 13 To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
- 14 Upon completion of the driver installation, click **Print a test page** to verify installation.
- 15 Click **Finish**.

Windows 7 and Windows 7 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
 - 2 Click **Add a printer**.
 - 3 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
 - 4 Select a printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
If you have selected your printer, go to step 7.
If you have clicked **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 5.
 - 5 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.
 - 6 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address in the **Hostname or IP address** box, and then click **Next**.
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.
- NOTE:**
- If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 7 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
 - 8 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "Getting the Driver File" on page 65.
 - 9 Click **Open**.
 - 10 Click **OK**.
 - 11 Select your printer name, and then click **Next**.
 - 12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.
Installation starts.
 - 13 If you do not want your printer shared, select **Do not share this printer**. Otherwise, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
 - 14 Click **Next**.
 - 15 To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
 - 16 Upon completion of the driver installation, click **Print a test page** to verify installation.
 - 17 Click **Finish**.

Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows 8.1, Windows 8.1 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2012, or Windows Server 2012 R2

- 1** On the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**.
 - 2** Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2) → **Devices and Printers**.
 - 3** Click **Add a printer**.
 - 4** Select a printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
If you have selected your printer, go to step **7**.
If you have clicked **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step **5**.
 - 5** Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.
 - 6** Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address in the **Hostname or IP address** box, and then click **Next**.
 - 7** Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
 - 8** Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "Getting the Driver File" on page 65.
 - 9** Click **Open**.
 - 10** Click **OK**.
 - 11** Select your printer name, and then click **Next**.
 - 12** To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.
Installation starts.
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.
- NOTE:**
- If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 13** If you do not want your printer shared, select **Do not share this printer**. Otherwise, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
 - 14** Click **Next**.
 - 15** To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
 - 16** Upon completion of the driver installation, click **Print a test page** to verify installation.
 - 17** Click **Finish**.

■ Setting Up for Web Services on Devices (WSD)

This section provides information for network printing with Web Services on Devices (WSD), the Microsoft protocol for Windows Vista and later operating systems.

For Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, and Windows 8.1, your printer is added with Web Services on Devices (WSD) by using the installer on the *Software Pack CD-ROM*. For details, see "Using Installer to Set Up Connection and Install Software" on page 61.

For Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, and Windows Server 2012 R2, you need to add the roles of print services first, and then install the print driver using the Windows **Add Printer** wizard.

Follow the instructions below.

Adding Roles of Print Services

• For Windows Server 2008:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Administrative Tools** → **Server Manager**.
- 2 From the **Action** menu, select **Add Roles**.
- 3 Select the **Print Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window in the **Add Roles Wizard**, and then click **Next**.
- 4 Click **Next**.
- 5 Select the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Click **Install**.

• For Windows Server 2008 R2:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Administrative Tools** → **Server Manager**.
- 2 From the **Action** menu, select **Add Roles**.
- 3 Select the **Print and Document Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window in the **Add Roles Wizard**, and then click **Next**.
- 4 Click **Next**.
- 5 Select the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Click **Install**.

• For Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2:

- 1 On the **Start** screen, click **Server Manager**.
- 2 Click **Add roles and features** to start **Add Roles and Features Wizard**.
- 3 Specify the settings and click **Next** until the **Select server roles** screen is displayed.
- 4 Select the **Print and Document Services** check box.
- 5 On the pop-up window, click **Add Features**.
- 6 Click **Next**.
- 7 Click **Next** on the **Select features** screen.
- 8 Read the explanation for **Print and Document Services** and click **Next**.
- 9 Select the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.
- 10 Click **Install**.

WSD (Web Services on Devices) Printer Setup

You can install your new printer on the network using Windows **Add Printer** wizard. When installing using the *Software Pack CD-ROM* that shipped with your printer, see "Using Installer to Set Up Connection and Install Software" on page 61.

• Installing a Print Driver Using the Add Printer Wizard

- 1 For Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2, click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
For Windows Vista, click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
For Windows Server 2008, click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Printer**.
For Windows 8 and Windows 8.1, on the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**. Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Devices and Printers**.
For Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2, on the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**. Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer Wizard**.
For Windows 8, Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2012, and Windows Server 2012 R2, go to step 4.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
- 4 In the list of available printers, select the one you want to use, and then click **Next**.

NOTE:

- In the list of available printers, the WSD (Web Services on Devices) printer is displayed in the form of `http://IP address/[UUID]`.
- If no WSD (Web Services on Devices) printer is displayed in the list, enter the printer's IP address manually to create a WSD (Web Services on Devices) printer. To enter the printer's IP address manually, follow the instructions below. To create a WSD (Web Services on Devices) printer, you must be a member of Administrators group.
 - 1 Click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
 - 2 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or hostname** and click **Next**.
 - 3 Select **Web Services Device** from **Device type**.
 - 4 Enter the printer's IP address in the **Hostname or IP address** text box and click **Next**.
- Before installing the driver using the **Add Printer** wizard on Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows 7, add the print driver to your computer.

- 5 If prompted, install the print driver on your computer. If you are prompted for an administrator password or confirmation, type the password or provide confirmation.
- 6 Complete the additional steps in the wizard, and then click **Finish**.
- 7 Print a test page to verify printer installation.
 - a Open the **Devices and Printers** or **Printers** folder by performing step 1.
 - b Right-click the printer you just created, and then click **Printer properties** (**Properties** for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008).
 - c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**. When a test page is printed successfully, the installation is complete.

■ Setting Up for Shared Printing

You can share your new printer on the network using the *Software Pack CD-ROM* that shipped with your printer, or using Windows Point and Print or peer-to-peer method.

This section describes Point and Print and peer-to-peer methods. Configure the printer sharing settings on the server computer, and then install its driver on all the client computers that use the shared printer by Point and Print or peer-to-peer method. Using either of the methods, however, you will not be able to use features such as the SimpleMonitor and other printer utilities, which will be installed from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.

NOTE:

- You need to purchase an Ethernet cable separately for shared printing.

Configuring the Sharing Settings of Your Printer

• For Windows Server 2003 and Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Printers and Faxes**.
- 2 Right-click this printer icon and select **Properties**.
- 3 From the **Sharing** tab, select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.
- 5 Click **OK**.
If the files are not present in your computer, insert the server operating system CD.
- 6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

• For Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.
- 3 Click **Change sharing options**.
The "**Windows needs your permission to continue**" appears.
- 4 Click **Continue**.
- 5 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 6 Select **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.
- 7 Click **OK**.
- 8 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

- **For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition**

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.
- 3 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

- **For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2008 R2**

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Printer properties**.
- 3 On the **Sharing** tab, select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

- **For Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows 8.1, Windows 8.1 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2012, and Windows Server 2012 R2**

- 1 On the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**.
- 2 Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2) → **Devices and Printers**.
- 3 Right-click the printer icon and select **Printer properties**.
- 4 On the **Sharing** tab, select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 5 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.
- 6 Click **OK**.
- 7 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

To check that the printer is shared:

- Make sure that the printer object in the **Printers**, **Printers and Faxes**, or **Devices and Printers** folder is shared. The share icon is displayed under the printer icon.
- Browse **Network** or **My Network Places**. Find the host name of the server and look for the shared name you assigned to the printer.

Now that the printer is shared, you can install the printer on network clients using the Point and Print method or the peer-to-peer method.

Point and Print

Point and Print is a Microsoft Windows technology that allows you to connect to a remote printer. This feature automatically downloads and installs the print driver.

• For Windows Server 2003 and Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

- 1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, double-click **My Network Places**.
- 2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
- 4 Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer.

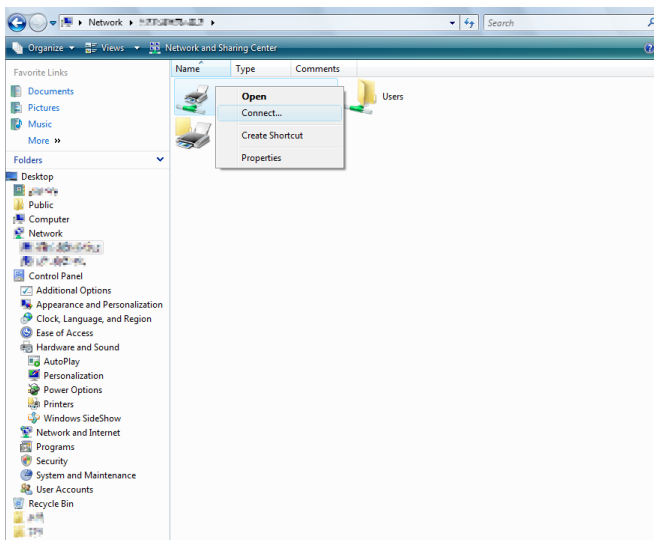
A new printer object is added to the **Printers and Faxes** folder. The duration of this procedure may vary based on the network traffic.

- 5 Close **My Network Places**.
- 6 Print a test page to verify installation.
 - a Click **Start** → **Printers and Faxes**.
 - b Select the printer you have installed.
 - c Click **File** → **Properties**.
 - d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

When a test page is printed successfully, the installation is complete.

• For Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Network**.
- 2 Locate and double-click the host name of the server computer.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.



- 4 Click **Install driver**.
- 5 Click **Continue** in the **User Account Control** dialog box.
- 6 Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer.

A new printer object is added to the **Printers** folder. The duration of this procedure may vary based on the network traffic.

- 7 Print a test page to verify installation.
 - a Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound**.
 - b Select **Printers**.
 - c Right-click the printer you just created and select **Properties**.
 - d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

When a test page is printed successfully, the installation is complete.

• For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Network**.
- 2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
- 4 Click **Install driver**.
- 5 Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer.

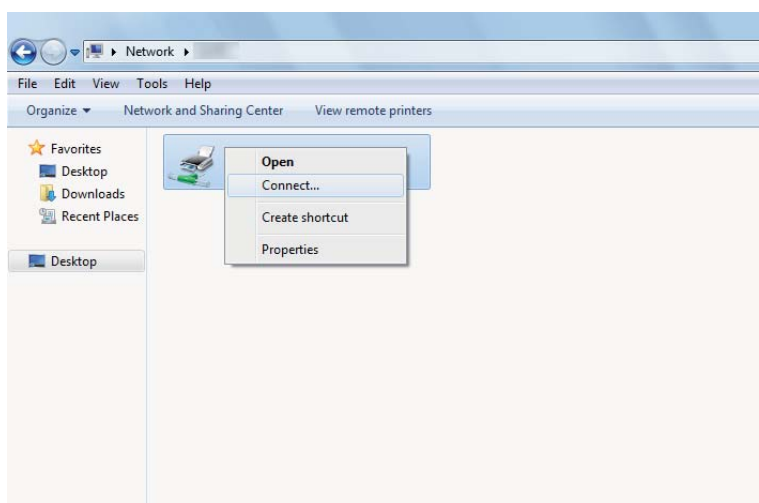
A new printer object is added to the **Printers** folder. The duration of this procedure may vary based on the network traffic.

- 6 Print a test page to verify installation.
 - a Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
 - b Select **Hardware and Sound**.
 - c Select **Printers**.
 - d Right-click the printer you just created and select **Properties**.
 - e On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

When a test page is printed successfully, the installation is complete.

• For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Click **Start** → **Computer** → **Network** (**Start** → **Network** for Windows Server 2008 R2).
- 2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.



- 4 Click **Install driver**.

- 5 Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer.

A new printer object is added to the **Devices and Printers** folder. The duration of this procedure may vary based on the network traffic.

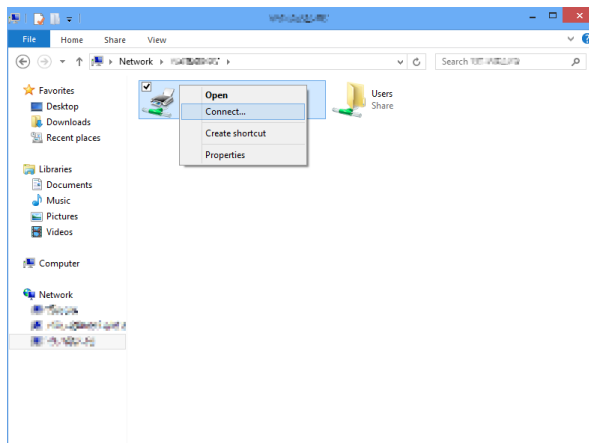
- 6 Print a test page to verify installation.

- a Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- b Right-click the printer you just created and select **Printer properties**.
- c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

When a test page is printed successfully, the installation is complete.

- **For Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows 8.1, Windows 8.1 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2012, and Windows Server 2012 R2**

- 1 On the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**.
- 2 Click **Control Panel** → **Network and Internet** → **View network computers and devices**.
- 3 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 4 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.



- 5 Click **Install driver**.

- 6 Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer.

A new printer object is added to the **Devices and Printers** folder. The duration of this procedure may vary based on the network traffic.

- 7 Print a test page to verify installation.

- a On the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**.
- b Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2) → **Devices and Printers**.
- c Right-click the printer you just created and select **Printer properties**.
- d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

When a test page is printed successfully, the installation is complete.

Peer-to-Peer

Peer-to-peer is a technology that allows you to connect to a printer connected to a host computer. You are required to download and install the print driver during the connection setup.

• For Windows Server 2003 and Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Printers and Faxes**.
- 2 Double-click the **Add Printer** icon to launch the **Add Printer Wizard**.
- 3 Click **Next**.
- 4 Select **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer**, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Click **Browse for a printer**, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Select the printer, and then click **Next**.

If the printer is not listed, click **Back** and enter the path to the printer in the text box.

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, specify the location where the driver is available.

- 7 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.
- 8 Click **Finish**.

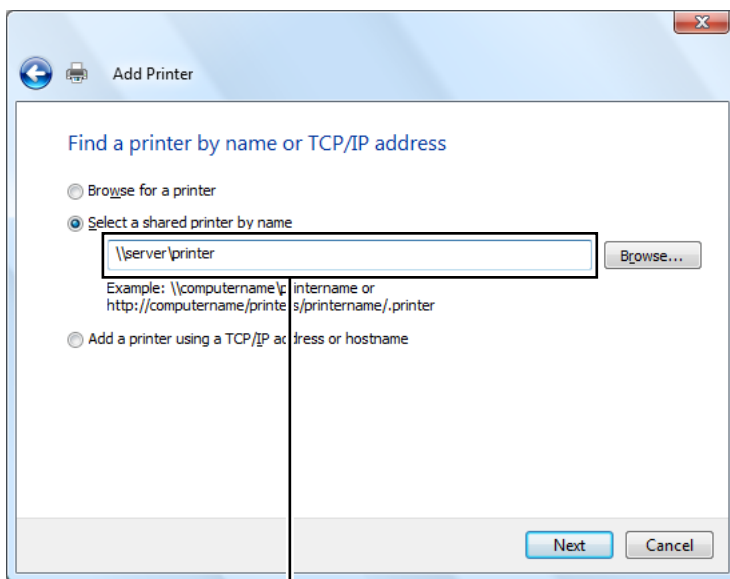
• For Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer wizard**.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**, and then click **Next**.

If the printer is listed, select the printer, and then click **Next**.

If the printer is not listed, click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

- a Click **Select a shared printer by name**.
- b Enter the path to the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.



For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, specify the location where the driver is available.

4 Perform the following as required, and then click **Next**.

- Click **Yes** to set this printer as the default printer.
- Click **Print a test page** to verify installation.

5 Click **Finish**.

If a test page is printed successfully, the installation is complete.

• For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.

2 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.

3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**, and then click **Next**.

If the printer is listed, select the printer, and then click **Next**.

If the printer is not listed, click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

a Click **Select a shared printer by name**.

b Enter the path to the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.

For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, specify the location where the driver is available.

4 Perform the following as required, and then click **Next**.

- Click **Yes** to set this printer as the default printer.
- Click **Print a test page** to verify installation.

5 Click **Finish**.

If a test page is printed successfully, the installation is complete.

• For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2008 R2

1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.

2 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.

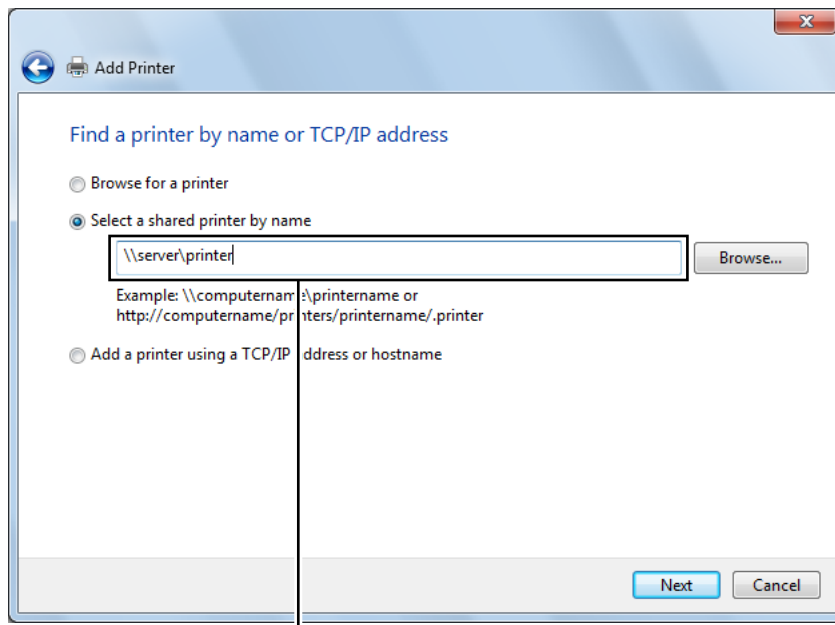
3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

If the printer is listed, select the printer, and then click **Next**.

If the printer is not listed, click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

a Click **Select a shared printer by name**.

b Enter the path to the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.



For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

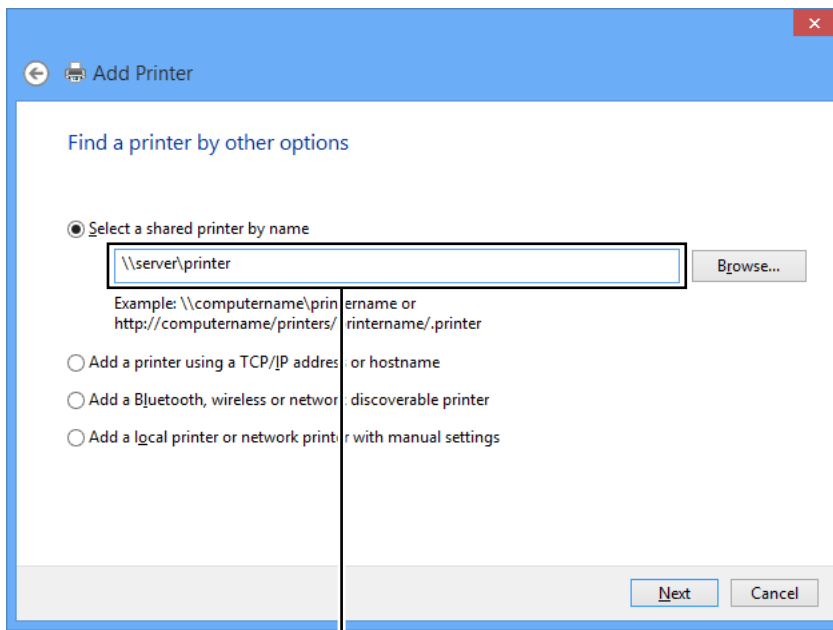
If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, you need to specify the path to the available drivers.

- 4 Perform the following as required, and then click **Finish**.
 - Click **Set as the default printer** to set this printer as the default printer.
 - Click **Print a test page** to verify installation.

If a test page is printed successfully, the installation is complete.

- **For Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows 8.1, Windows 8.1 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2012, and Windows Server 2012 R2**

- 1 On the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**.
- 2 Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2) → **Devices and Printers**.
- 3 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
- 4 If the printer is listed, select the printer, and then click **Next**.
If the printer is not listed, click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
 - a Click **Select a shared printer by name**.
 - b Enter the path to the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.



For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, specify the location where the driver is available.

- 5 Confirm the printer name, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Perform the following as required, and then click **Finish**.
 - Click **Set as the default printer** to set this printer as the default printer.
 - Click **Print a test page** to verify installation.If a test page is printed successfully, the installation is complete.

Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Mac OS X

■ Installing the Print Driver

For information on how to install the print driver, refer to the PostScript 3 Compatible User Guide.

■ Installing Software

- 1 Run the *Software Pack CD-ROM* on the Mac OS X.
- 2 Double-click the CD-ROM icon displayed on the desktop.
- 3 Double-click the installer icon.
- 4 Click **Continue** on the **Introduction** screen.
- 5 Select a language for the **Software License Agreement**.
- 6 After reading the **Software License Agreement**, click **Continue**.
- 7 If you agree to the terms of the **Software License Agreement**, click **Agree** to continue the installation process.
NOTE:
 - When the screen to select the installation destination appears, select an installation location and click **Continue**.
- 8 Click **Install** to perform the standard installation.
- 9 For Mac OS X 10.5 and Mac OS X 10.6, enter the administrator's name and password, and then click **OK**.
For Mac OS X 10.7, OS X 10.8, and OS X 10.9, enter the administrator's name and password, and then click **Install Software**.
- 10 Click **Continue Installation**.
- 11 Click **Restart** to complete the installation.

■ Adding a Printer

Adding a Printer on OS X 10.9

• When Using a USB connection

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Connect the printer and your computer with the USB cable.
- 3 Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Printers & Scanners**.
- 4 Confirm your printer is added to **Printers & Scanners**.
If your printer is not displayed, execute the following procedures.
- 5 Click the plus (+) sign, and then click **Default**.
If **Add Printer or Scanner** is displayed, select **Add Printer or Scanner**, and then click **Default**.
Proceed to step 6.
- 6 Select the printer connected via USB from the **Name** list.
Name, **Location**, and **Use** are automatically entered.
- 7 Click **Add**.

• When Using Bonjour

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Make sure that your computer is connected to the network.
If you use wired connection, make sure that the Ethernet cable is connected between the printer and the network.
If you use wireless connection, make sure that wireless connection is configured properly on your computer and printer.
- 3 Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Printers & Scanners**.
- 4 Click the plus (+) sign, and select the printer from **Nearby Printers**.
The printer will be added to **Printers & Scanners**.
If there are no printers in **Nearby Printers**, select **Add Printer or Scanner**, and then click **Default**.
Proceed to step 5.
- 5 Select the printer connected via Bonjour from the **Name** list.
Name and **Use** are automatically entered.
NOTE:
 - If **AirPrint** is automatically selected for **Use**, select the model of your printer for **Use** manually.
- 6 Click **Add**.

• When Using IP Printing

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Make sure that your computer is connected to the network.
If you use wired connection, make sure that the Ethernet cable is connected between the printer and the network.
If you use wireless connection, make sure that wireless connection is configured properly on your computer and printer.
- 3 Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Printers & Scanners**.
- 4 Click the plus (+) sign, and then click **IP**.
If **Add Printer or Scanner** is displayed, select **Add Printer or Scanner**, and then click **IP**.
Proceed to step 5.
- 5 Select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD** for **Protocol**.
- 6 Enter the IP address of the printer in the **Address** area.
- 7 Select the model of your printer for **Use**.
NOTE:
 - When the printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.
- 8 Click **Add**.

Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.7 and OS X 10.8

• When Using a USB connection

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Connect the printer and your computer with the USB cable.
- 3 Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Print & Scan**.
- 4 Confirm your printer is added to **Print & Scan**.
If your printer is not displayed, execute the following procedures.
5 Click the plus (+) sign, and then click **Default**.
If **Add Other Printer or Scanner** (**Add Printer or Scanner** for OS X 10.8) is displayed, select **Add Other Printer or Scanner** (**Add Printer or Scanner** for OS X 10.8), and then click **Default**.
Proceed to step 6.
- 6 Select the printer connected via USB from the **Printer Name** (**Name** for OS X 10.8) list.
Name, **Location**, and **Print Using** (**Use** for OS X 10.8) are automatically entered.
- 7 Click **Add**.

• When Using Bonjour

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Make sure that your computer is connected to the network.
If you use wired connection, make sure that the Ethernet cable is connected between the printer and the network.
If you use wireless connection, make sure that wireless connection is configured properly on your computer and printer.
- 3 Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Print & Scan**.
- 4 Click the plus (+) sign, and select the printer from **Nearby Printers**.
The printer will be added to **Print & Scan**.
If there are no printers in **Nearby Printers**, select **Add Other Printer or Scanner** (**Add Printer or Scanner** for OS X 10.8), and then click **Default**.
Proceed to step 5.
- 5 Select the printer connected via Bonjour from the **Printer Name** (**Name** for OS X 10.8) list.
Name and **Print Using** (**Use** for OS X 10.8) are automatically entered.
NOTE:
 - If **AirPrint Printer** (**AirPrint** for OS X 10.8) is automatically selected for **Print Using** (**Use** for OS X 10.8), select the model of your printer for **Use** manually.
- 6 Click **Add**.

• When Using IP Printing

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Make sure that your computer is connected to the network.
If you use wired connection, make sure that the Ethernet cable is connected between the printer and the network.

If you use wireless connection, make sure that wireless connection is configured properly on your computer and printer.

3 Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Print & Scan**.

4 Click the plus (+) sign, and then click **IP**.

If **Add Other Printer or Scanner (Add Printer or Scanner for OS X 10.8)** is displayed, select **Add Other Printer or Scanner (Add Printer or Scanner for OS X 10.8)**, and then click **IP**.

Proceed to step **5**.

5 Select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD** for **Protocol**.

6 Enter the IP address of the printer in the **Address** area.

7 Select the model of your printer for **Print Using (Use for OS X 10.8)**.

NOTE:

- When the printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.

8 Click **Add**.

Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.5.8 and Mac OS X 10.6

• When Using a USB connection

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Connect the printer and your computer with the USB cable.

3 Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Print & Fax**.

4 Confirm your printer is added to **Print & Fax** in **System Preferences**.

If your printer is not displayed, execute the following procedures.

5 Click the plus (+) sign, and then click **Default**.

6 Select the printer connected via USB from the **Printer Name** list.
Name, **Location**, and **Print Using** are automatically entered.

7 Click **Add**.

• When Using Bonjour

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Make sure that your computer is connected to the network.

If you use wired connection, make sure that the Ethernet cable is connected between the printer and the network.

If you use wireless connection, make sure that wireless connection is configured properly on your computer and printer.

3 Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Print & Fax**.

4 Click the plus (+) sign, and then click **Default**.

5 Select the printer connected via Bonjour from the **Printer Name** list.
Name and **Print Using** are automatically entered.

6 Click **Add**.

• When Using IP Printing

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Make sure that your computer is connected to the network.
If you use wired connection, make sure that the Ethernet cable is connected between the printer and the network.
If you use wireless connection, make sure that wireless connection is configured properly on your computer and printer.
- 3 Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Print & Fax**.
- 4 Click the plus (+) sign, and then click **IP**.
- 5 Select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD** for **Protocol**.
- 6 Enter the IP address of the printer in the **Address** area.
- 7 Select the model of your printer for **Print Using**.
NOTE:
 - When the printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.
- 8 Click **Add**.

Configuring Printer and Installing the Print Driver on Linux (CUPS)

Your printer supports the following OS versions:

- Red Hat® Enterprise Linux® 6 Desktop (32-bit)
- SUSE® Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 (32-bit)
- Ubuntu® 12.04 (32-bit)
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Desktop (64-bit)
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 (64-bit)
- Ubuntu 12.04 (64-bit)

This section provides information for installing or setting up the print driver with CUPS (Common UNIX Printing System) on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Desktop, SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11, or Ubuntu 12.04.

NOTE:

- When using a CD drive in a Linux environment, you need to mount the CD according to your system environment. The command strings are mount/media/CD-ROM.
- The print drivers, the rpm file and deb file, are included in the **Linux** folder on the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.

■ Installing the Print Driver

For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Desktop

- 1 Double-click the rpm file.
- 2 Click **Install**.
- 3 Enter the administrator password, and click **Authenticate**.
Installation starts. When the installation is complete, the window is automatically closed.

For SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11

- 1 Double-click the rpm file.
- 2 Click **Install**.
- 3 Enter the administrator password, and click **Authenticate**.
Installation starts. When the installation is complete, the window is automatically closed.

For Ubuntu 12.04

- 1 Double-click the deb file.
- 2 Click **Install**.
- 3 Enter the user password, and click **OK**.
- 4 Click **Close**.
- 5 Click **X** (Close) at the top-left of the dialog box to close the **Package Installer** dialog box.

■ Setting Up the Queue

To execute printing, you must set up the print queue on your workstation.

NOTE:

- When you have finished setting up the queue, you can print jobs from the applications. Start the print job from the application, and specify the queue in the print dialog box.
However, you may be able to print only from the default queue depending on the application. In these cases, before you start printing, set the queue you want to print to as the default queue. For information on specifying the default queue, see also "Setting the Default Queue" on page 90.

For CUPS Web UI

The following procedure uses CUPS 1.4.3 as an example.

- 1 Open the URL "**http://localhost:631**" using a web browser.
- 2 Click **Administration**.
- 3 Click **Add Printer**.
- 4 Enter **root** as the user name, and then enter the administrator password.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 Select either of the following according to the type of your printer connection.
For network connections:
 - a Select **LPD/LPR Host or Printer** from the **Other Network Printers** menu, and then click **Continue**.
 - b Enter the IP address of the printer in **Connection**.
Format: **lpd://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx** (the IP address of the printer)
 - c Click **Continue**.
 - d Enter the name of the printer in **Name** in the **Add Printer** window, and then click **Continue**.
You can optionally specify the location and description of the printer for further information.
If you want to share the printer, select the **Share This Printer** check box.
For USB connections:
 - a Select **FUJI XEROX DocuPrint XXX (FUJI XEROX DocuPrint XXX)** from the **Local Printers** menu, and then click **Continue**.
 - b Enter the name of the printer in **Name** in the **Add Printer** window, and then click **Continue**.
You can optionally specify the location and description of the printer for further information.
If you want to share the printer, select the **Share This Printer** check box.
- 7 Select **FX** from the **Make** menu, and then click **Continue**.
- 8 Select **FX Printer Driver for Linux** from the **Model** menu, and then click **Add Printer**.
The setup is complete.
You can optionally specify the default options settings of the printer.

■ Setting the Default Queue

For CUPS Web UI

The following procedure uses CUPS 1.4.3 as an example.

- 1 Open the URL "**http://localhost:631**" using a web browser.
- 2 Click **Administration**.
- 3 Click **Manage Printers**.
- 4 Click the queue name for which you want to specify the printing options.
- 5 Click the **Administration** drop-down list box, and then select **Set AS Server Default**.
- 6 Enter **root** as the user name, enter administrator password and click **OK**.
The setting is complete.

■ Specifying the Printing Options

For CUPS Web UI

The following procedure uses CUPS 1.4.3 as an example.

- 1 Open the URL "**http://localhost:631**" using a web browser.
- 2 Click **Administration**.
- 3 Click **Manage Printers**.
- 4 Click the queue name for which you want to specify the printing options.
- 5 Click the **Administration** drop-down list box, and then select **Set Default Options**.
- 6 Specify the required settings, and click **Set Default Options**.
- 7 Enter **root** as the user name, enter administrator password and click **OK**.
The message **Printer xxx default options have been set successfully**. appears.
The setting is complete.

Printing Basics

- "About Print Media" on page 92
- "Supported Print Media" on page 95
- "Loading Print Media" on page 96
- "Setting Paper Sizes and Types" on page 104
- "Printing" on page 105

About Print Media

Using paper that is not appropriate for the printer can cause paper jams, image quality problems, or printer failure. To achieve the best performance from your printer, we recommend you to use only the paper described in this section.

When using paper other than that recommended, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Print Media Usage Guidelines

The printer tray accommodates various sizes and types of paper and other specialty media. Follow these guidelines when loading paper and media:

- Fan paper or other specialty media before loading in the tray.
- Do not print on label stock once a label has been removed from a sheet.
- Use only paper envelopes. Do not use envelopes with windows, metal clasps, or adhesives with release strips.
- Print all envelopes single-sided only.
- Some wrinkling and embossing may occur when printing envelopes.
- Do not overload the tray. Do not load print media above the fill line on the inside of the paper width guides.
- Adjust the paper width guides to fit the paper size.
- If excessive jams occur, use paper or other media from a new package.



WARNING:

- **Do not use conductive paper such as origami paper, carbonic paper or conductively-coated paper. When paper jam occurs, it may cause short-circuit and eventually a fire accident.**

See also:

- "Loading Print Media in the Standard 150 Sheet Tray" on page 96
- "Loading Envelope in the Standard 150 Sheet Tray" on page 98
- "Printing on Custom Size Paper" on page 113

■ Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) Guidelines

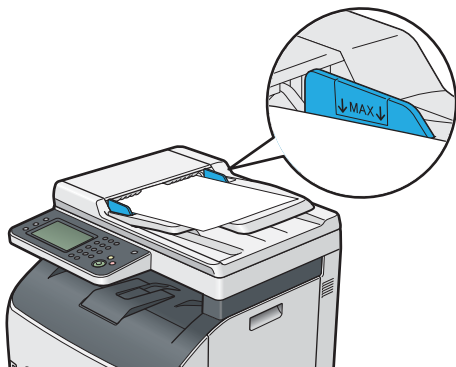
The ADF accommodates the following original sizes:

- Width: 148 – 215.9 mm (5.83 – 8.50 inches)
- Length: 210 – 355.6 mm (8.27 – 14.00 inches)

The weight range includes 60 – 105 gsm.

Follow these guidelines when loading original documents into the ADF:

- Load documents face up so that the top of the document enters the printer first.
- Place only loose sheets of paper in the ADF.
- Adjust the document guides so that they fit against the documents.
- Insert paper in the document feeder tray only when the ink on the paper is completely dry.
- Do not load documents above the MAX fill line. You can load up to 15 sheets of 64 gsm documents.



NOTE:

- You cannot load the following documents in the ADF. Be sure to place them on the document glass.

 Curled originals	 Pre-punched paper
 Lightweight originals	 Folded, creased or torn originals
 Cut and paste originals	 Carbon paper

■ Print Media That Can Damage Your Printer

Your printer is designed to use a variety of media types for print jobs. However, some media can cause poor output quality, increased paper jams, or damage to your printer.

Unacceptable media includes:

- Rough or porous media
- Plastic media
- Paper that has been folded or wrinkled
- Paper with staples
- Envelopes with windows or metal clasps
- Padded envelopes
- Non-laser glossy or coated paper
- Perforated media



WARNING:

- Do not use conductive paper such as origami paper, carbonic paper or conductively-coated paper. When paper jam occurs, it may cause short-circuit and eventually a fire accident.

■ Print Media Storage Guidelines

Providing good storage conditions for your paper and other media contributes to optimum print quality.

- Store print media in dark, cool, and relatively dry locations. Most paper items are susceptible to damage from ultraviolet (UV) and visible light. UV radiation, which is emitted by the sun and fluorescent bulbs, is particularly damaging to paper items. The intensity and length of exposure to visible light on paper items should be reduced as much as possible.
- Maintain constant temperatures and relative humidity.
- Avoid attics, kitchens, garages, and basements for storing print media.
- Store print media flat. Print media should be stored on pallets, cartons, shelves, or in cabinets.
- Avoid having food or drinks in the area where print media is stored or handled.
- Do not open sealed packages of paper until you are ready to load them into the printer. Leave paper in the original packaging. For most commercial cut-size grades, the ream wrapper contains an inner lining that protects the paper from moisture loss or gain.
- Leave the media inside the bag until you are ready to use it; reinsert unused media in the bag and reseal it for protection. Some specialty media is packaged inside resealable plastic bags.

Supported Print Media

Using unsuitable print media may lead to paper jams, poor print quality, breakdown and damage to your printer. To use the features of this printer effectively, use the suggested print media that is recommended here.

IMPORTANT:

- The toner may come off the print media if it gets wet by water, rain, steam, and so on. For details, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Usable Print Media

The types of print media that can be used on this printer are as follows:

Standard 150 Sheet Tray

Paper Size	A4 SEF (210 × 297 mm)
	B5 SEF (182 × 257 mm)
	A5 SEF (148 × 210 mm)
	Letter SEF (8.5 × 11 inches)
	Legal SEF (8.5 × 14 inches)
	Folio SEF (8.5 × 13 inches)
	Executive SEF (7.25 × 10.5 inches)
	C5 SEF (162 × 229 mm)
	Monarch SEF (3.875 × 7.5 inches)
	Monarch LEF (7.5 × 3.875 inches)*
	Com 10 SEF (4.125 × 9.5 inches)
	DL SEF (110 × 220 mm)
	DL LEF (220 × 110 mm)*
	Custom size:
Paper Type	Width: 76.2 – 215.9 mm (3 – 8.5 inches)
	Length: 127 – 355.6 mm (5 – 14 inches)
	Plain (60 – 90 gsm)
	Bond (91 – 105 gsm)
	Lightweight Cardstock (106 – 163 gsm)
	Lightweight Glossy Cardstock (106 – 163 gsm)
	Envelope
	Labels
	Recycled (60 – 105 gsm)
Loading Capacity	150 sheets of standard paper

* Monarch and DL can be supported by LEF with their flaps open.

NOTE:

- SEF and LEF indicate the paper feed direction; SEF stands for short-edge feed. LEF stands for long-edge feed.
- Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in this printer.

See also:

- "Loading Print Media in the Standard 150 Sheet Tray" on page 96
- "Loading Envelope in the Standard 150 Sheet Tray" on page 98
- "Loading Letterhead in the Standard 150 Sheet Tray" on page 100

Using print media, which is different from the paper size or paper type set on the print driver, may lead to paper jams. To make sure that printing is correctly performed, select the correct paper size and paper type.

Loading Print Media

Loading print media properly helps prevent jams and ensures trouble-free printing.

Before loading print media, identify the recommended print side of the print media. This information is usually on the print media package.

NOTE:

- After loading paper in the standard 150 sheet tray, specify the same paper type on the operator panel.

■ Capacity

The standard 150 sheet tray can hold:

- 150 sheets of standard paper
- 16.2 mm (0.64 inches) of thick paper
- One sheet of coated paper
- Five envelopes
- 16.2 mm (0.64 inches) of labels

■ Print Media Dimensions

The standard 150 sheet tray accepts print media within the following dimensions:

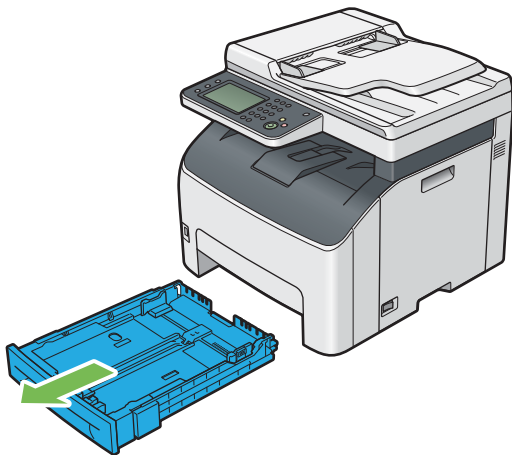
- Width: 76.2 – 215.9 mm (3.00 – 8.50 inches)
- Length: 127 – 355.6 mm (5.00 – 14.00 inches)

■ Loading Print Media in the Standard 150 Sheet Tray

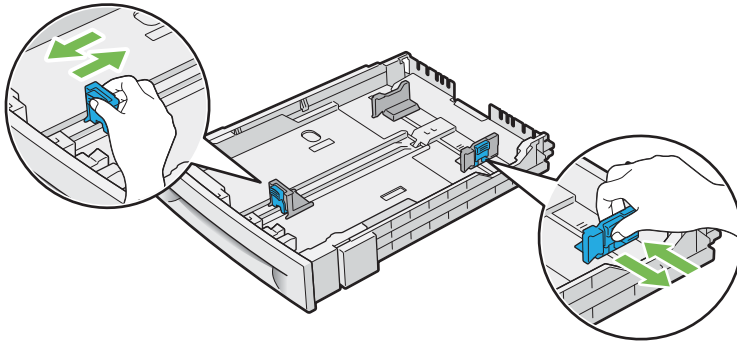
NOTE:

- To avoid paper jams, do not remove the tray while printing is in progress.
- Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet print media in this printer.

- 1 Hold the tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.

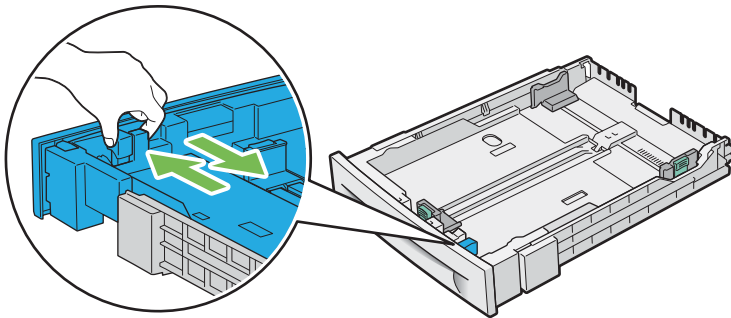


2 Adjust the paper guides.

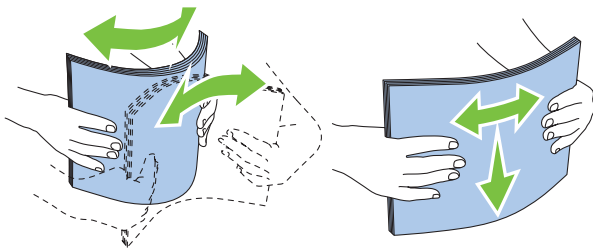


NOTE:

- When loading Legal size or user-specified print media, slide the extendable part of the tray while pinching the lever.



3 Before loading the print media, flex the sheets and fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.

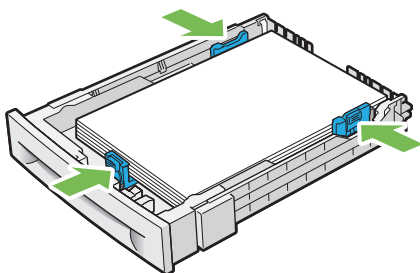


4 Load the print media into the tray with the recommended print side facing up.

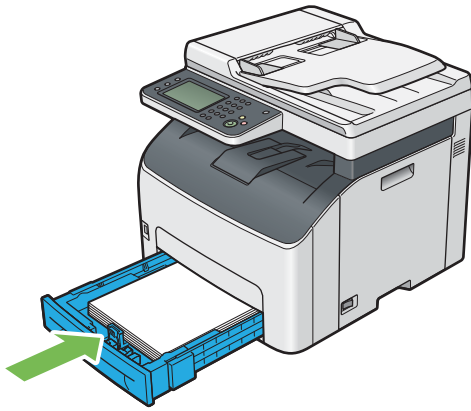
NOTE:

- Do not exceed the maximum fill line in the tray. Overfilling the tray may cause paper jams.
- When loading coated paper, load coated paper one sheet at a time.

5 Align the width guides and length guide against the edges of the print media.

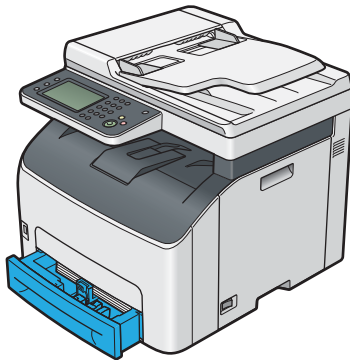


- 6 After confirming that the guides are securely adjusted, insert the tray into the printer.



NOTE:

- If the front side of the tray is extended, the tray protrudes when it is inserted into the printer.



- 7 Select the paper size and type from the print driver if the loaded print media is not the standard paper.

NOTE:

- For more information about setting the paper size and type on the print driver, refer to the Help provided for the print driver.

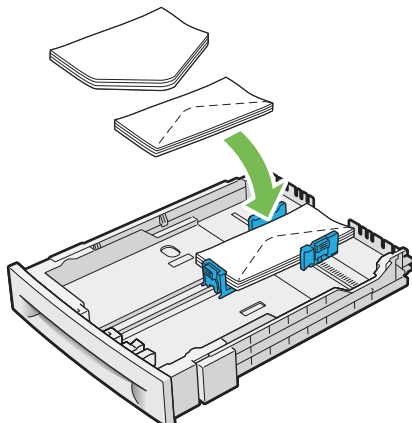
Loading Envelope in the Standard 150 Sheet Tray

NOTE:

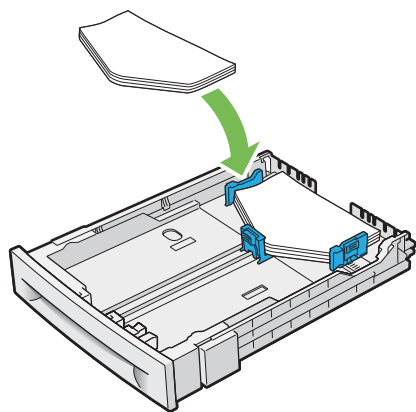
- When you print on envelopes, be sure to specify the envelope setting on the print driver. If not specified, the print image will be rotated 180 degrees.

• When Loading Com 10, DL, or Monarch

Load envelopes with the flaps closed. Place the print side facing up, and the flaps come at the right when you face towards the printer.



To prevent DL and Monarch from being wrinkled, they are recommended to be loaded with the flaps opened. Place the print side facing up, and the flaps come at the bottom when you face towards the printer.

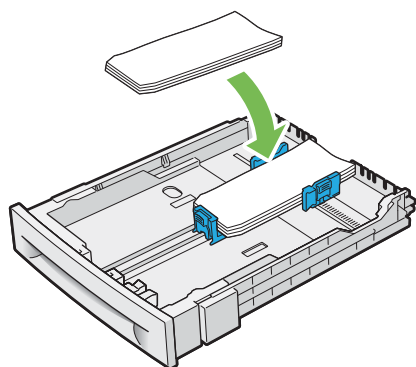


NOTE:

- When you load the envelopes in the long-edge feed (LEF) orientation, be sure to specify the landscape orientation on the print driver.

• When Loading C5

Load envelopes with the flaps opened. Place the print side facing up, and the flaps come at the bottom when you face towards the printer.

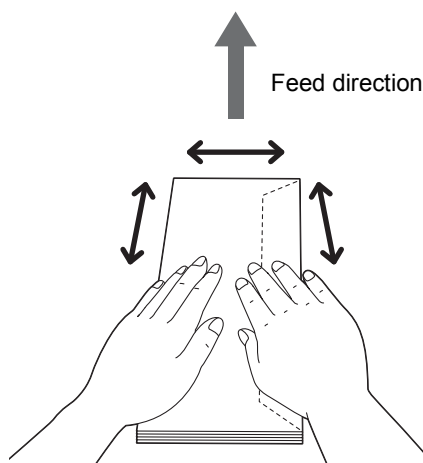


IMPORTANT:

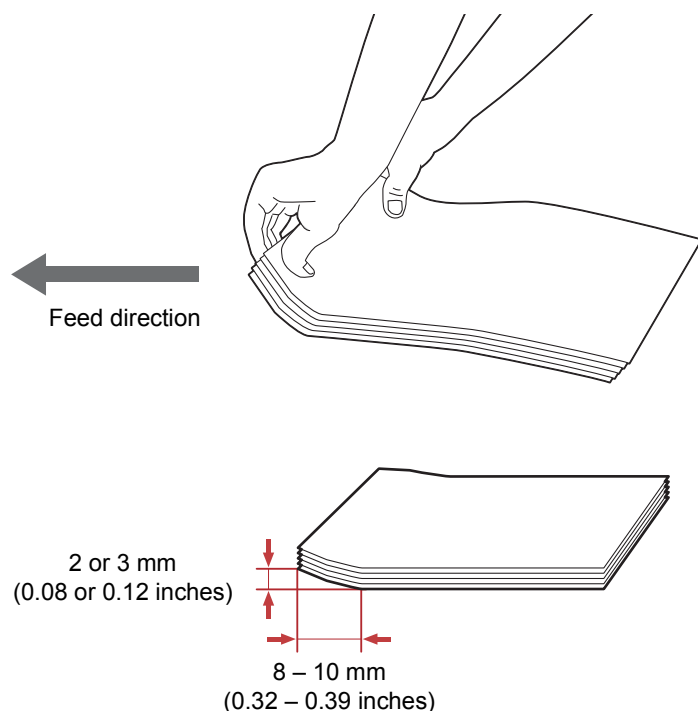
- Never use envelopes with windows, or coated linings. These lead to paper jams and can cause damage to the printer.

NOTE:

- Up to 5 envelopes can be loaded in the standard 150 sheet tray.
- If you do not load envelopes in the standard 150 sheet tray right after they have been removed from the packaging, they may bulge. To avoid jams, flatten the envelopes before loading them in the standard 150 sheet tray. When flattening the envelopes, firmly press down on the entire surface of the envelopes as shown below.



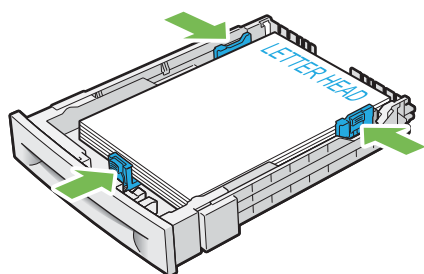
- If envelopes are still not fed correctly, curl the edge of the envelopes as shown in the following illustration. The amount of the curl should be 5 mm (0.20 inches) or less, 2 or 3 mm (0.08 or 0.12 inches) is recommended. The area of the curl should be 8 – 10 mm (0.32 – 0.39 inches) from the top edge of the envelopes. Do not curl the envelopes too much or make a crease.



- To confirm the correct orientation of envelopes, see the instruction on the Envelope/Paper Setup Navigator on the print driver.

Loading Letterhead in the Standard 150 Sheet Tray

Load the letterhead in the printer with the print side facing up. Make sure that the title on the letterhead enters the printer first.



■ Manual Duplex Printing

NOTE:

- When printing on curled paper, straighten the paper, and then insert it into the standard 150 sheet tray.

Operations on Your Computer

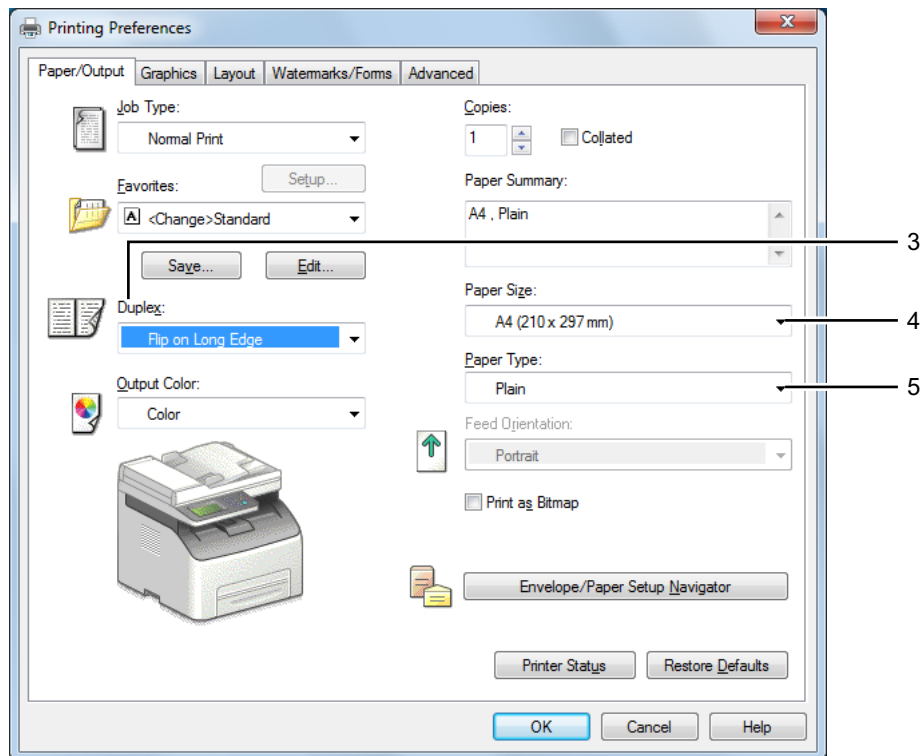
• Using the Windows Print Driver

The following procedure uses Microsoft® Windows® 7 as an example.

NOTE:

- The way to display the printer **Properties/Printing Preferences** dialog box differs according to the application software. Refer to the manual of your respective application software.

- 1 From the application menu, select **Print**.
- 2 Select the printer from **Select Printer**, and then click **Preferences**.
The **Paper/Output** tab of the **Printing Preferences** dialog box appears.
- 3 From **Duplex**, select either **Flip on Long Edge** or **Flip on Short Edge** to define the way 2-sided print pages are bound.



- 4 From **Paper Size**, select the size of the document to be printed.
- 5 From **Paper Type**, select the paper type to be used.
- 6 Click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** dialog box.
- 7 Click **Print** in the **Print** dialog box to start printing.

IMPORTANT:

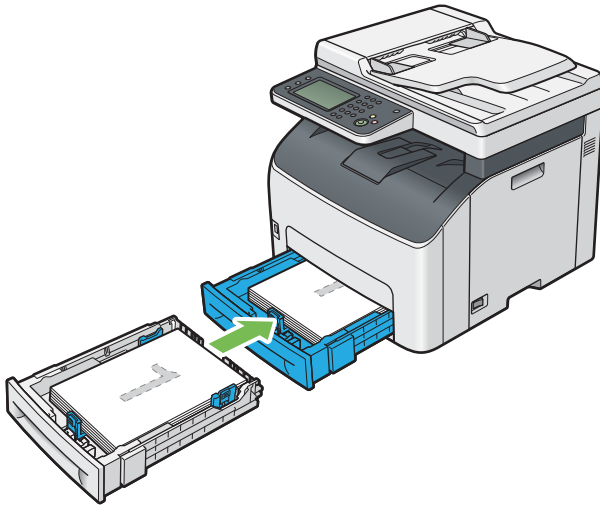
- When you start manual duplex printing, the instruction window appears. Note that the window cannot be reopened once it is closed. Do not close the window until duplex printing is complete.

Loading Print Media in the Standard 150 Sheet Tray

1 Print the even pages (back sides).

For a six-page document, back sides are printed in the order of page 6, page 4, then page 2.

The status LED (**Data**) blinks and `Insert Output to Tray` appears on the touch panel when the printer finishes printing the even pages.



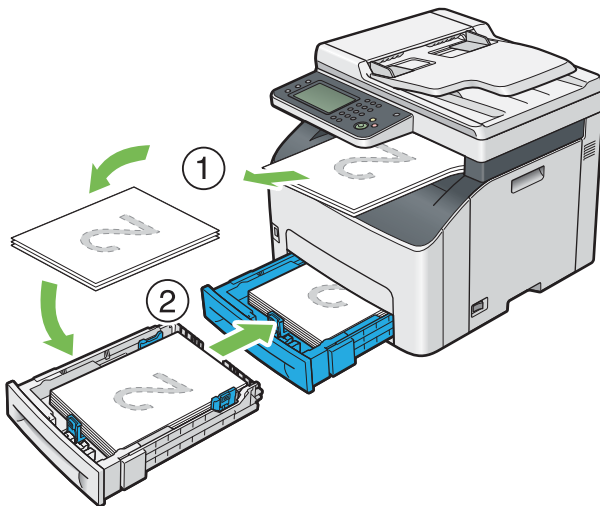
2 After the even pages are printed, remove the paper stack from the center output tray.

NOTE:

- Warped or curled paper can cause paper jams. Straighten them before setting.

3 Stack the paper and set them as they are (with the blank side facing up) into the standard 150 sheet tray.

Pages are printed in the order of page 1 (back of page 2), page 3 (back of page 4), and then page 5 (back of page 6).



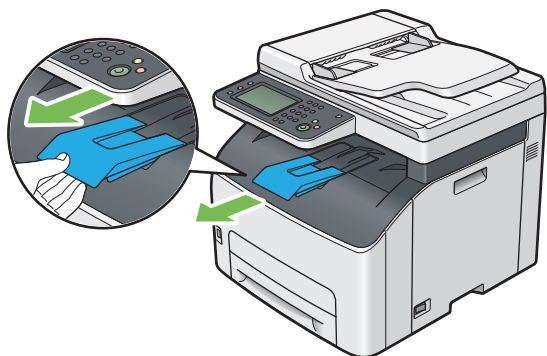
NOTE:

- Printing on both sides of the paper is not possible if the document consists of various sizes of paper.

■ Using the Output Tray Extension

The output tray extension is designed to prevent print media from falling from the printer after the print job is complete.

Before printing a long length document, make sure that the output tray extension is fully extended.



Setting Paper Sizes and Types

When loading print media, set the paper size and type on the operator panel before printing.

This section describes how to set the paper size and type on the operator panel.

See also:

- "Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 206

■ Setting Paper Sizes

IMPORTANT:

- Paper size settings must match those of the actual print media loaded in the tray. Otherwise, paper size mismatch errors or paper jams may occur.

- 1 On the operator panel, press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Paper Tray Settings**.
- 3 Select **Size**.
- 4 Select the desired paper size.
- 5 Select **OK**.

■ Setting Paper Types

IMPORTANT:

- Paper type settings must match those of the actual print media loaded in the tray. Otherwise, print-quality problems can occur.

- 1 On the operator panel, press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Paper Tray Settings**.
- 3 Select **Type**.
- 4 Select the desired paper type.
- 5 Select **OK**.

Printing

This section covers how to print documents from your printer and how to cancel a job.

■ Printing from the Computer

Install the print driver to use all the features of the printer. When you choose **Print** from an application, a window representing the print driver opens. Select the appropriate settings for the file to print. Print settings selected from the driver have precedence over the default menu settings selected from the operator panel or the Printer Setting Utility.

For information on PostScript 3 Compatible driver printing for Mac OS X, refer to the PostScript 3 Compatible User Guide.

Printing from the Computer (Windows)

- 1 Open the file you want to print.
- 2 From the application menu, select **Print**.
- 3 Verify that the correct printer is selected in the dialog box. Modify the system settings as needed (such as the pages you want to print or the number of copies).
- 4 To adjust system settings not available from the first screen, such as **Paper Size**, **Paper Type**, or **Feed Orientation**, click **Preferences**.
The **Printing Preferences** dialog box appears.
- 5 Specify the system settings. For more information, click **Help**.
- 6 Click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** dialog box.
- 7 Click **Print** to send the job to the selected printer.

■ Canceling a Print Job

There are several methods for canceling a print job.

For information on PostScript 3 Compatible driver printing for Mac OS X, refer to the PostScript 3 Compatible User Guide.

Canceling a Print Job From the Operator Panel

To cancel a job after it has started printing:

- 1 Press the  (**Stop**) button.

NOTE:

- Printing is canceled only for the current job. All the following jobs will continue to print.

Canceling a Print Job From the Computer (Windows)

• Canceling a Print Job From the Taskbar

When you send a job to print, a small printer icon appears in the right corner of the taskbar.

- 1 Double-click the printer icon.
A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.
- 2 Select the job you want to cancel.
- 3 Press the **Delete** key.
- 4 Click **Yes** on the **Printers** dialog box to cancel a print job.

• Canceling a Print Job From the Desktop

- 1 Minimize all programs to reveal the desktop.
For Windows Server® 2003, click **Start** → **Printers and Faxes**.
For Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2, click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
For Windows Vista® and Windows Server 2008, click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
For Windows 8 and Windows 8.1, on the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**. Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Devices and Printers**.
For Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2, on the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**. Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware** → **Devices and Printers**.
A list of available printers appears.
- 2 Double-click the printer you selected when you sent the job.
A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.
- 3 Select the job you want to cancel.
- 4 Press the **Delete** key.
- 5 Click **Yes** on the **Printers** dialog box to cancel a print job.

■ Using the Secure Print Feature

When you send a job to the printer, you can specify the information such as user ID, passcode, and job name in the print driver to store the job in the memory. When you are ready to print the job, use the operator panel menus of the printer to identify which job in the memory you want to print.

NOTE:

- The Secure Print feature is available only when **RAM Disk** under **System Settings** is set to **On**.
- The data in the memory is cleared when the printer is turned off.

Secure Print

You can store print jobs secured with a passcode in the memory. Users with the passcode can print them from the operator panel. This feature can be used to print confidential documents. The stored job in the memory is deleted automatically after printing. You can select to delete the stored job before printing, or the stored job is deleted by turning off the printer.



NOTE:

- Secure Print is available when you use the PCL or PostScript 3 Compatible driver.

Procedures for Printing Secure Print

The following are procedures for storing and printing jobs.

• Storing Print Jobs

For Secure Print, select **Secure Print** for **Job Type** and specify the user ID, passcode and job name by clicking **Setup** in the **Paper/Output** tab of the print driver. When you send the job to the printer, the job will be stored in the memory until you request to print from the operator panel or turn off the printer.

NOTE:

- If a print job is too large for the memory available, the printer may display error messages.
- If a document name is not assigned to your print job in the print driver, the job's name will be identified using the printer's time and date of submission to distinguish it from other jobs you have stored under your name.

• Printing the Stored Jobs

Once jobs are stored, you can use the operator panel to specify printing.

Printing the Secure Print Job

Secure Print requires the passcode you specified in the driver when you sent the job.

- 1 Press the  (**Job Status**) button.
- 2 Select **Secure Print**.
- 3 Select a user ID you specified in the print driver.
- 4 Enter the passcode you specified in the print driver using the number pad, and select **OK**.

For details about specifying the passcode, see "Specifying Your Passcode on the Operator Panel" on page 108.

- 5 Select the document you want to print.

NOTE:

- By default, the driver setting is used for the number of copies to print. You can select `Quantity` to change the setting.

- 6 Select `Print`.

NOTE:

- If you want to delete the data in the memory after printing, select the `Print and Delete` check box.

- 7 Select `OK`.

The stored document will be printed.

• Specifying Your Passcode on the Operator Panel

When you select your user ID for Secure Print, a screen to enter the passcode appears.

Use the number pad to enter the numeric passcode you specified in the print driver. The passcode you entered will be displayed as asterisks (*****) to ensure confidentiality.

If you enter an invalid passcode, `Wrong Password Re-enter` appears. Wait for three seconds, or select `Close` to return to the screen to enter the passcode.

When you enter a valid passcode, you have access to all print jobs matching the user name and passcode you entered. The print jobs matching the passcode you entered appear on the screen. You can then choose to print or to delete jobs matching the passcode you entered. For details, see "Printing the Stored Jobs" on page 107.

• Deleting Stored Jobs

A job that has been stored will be deleted after printing if selected to do so on the operator panel. Otherwise, the job remains stored until you delete them on the operator panel.

NOTE:

- The data in the memory is cleared when the printer is turned off.

■ Direct Print Using the USB Storage Device

The Print from USB feature allows you to print files stored in a USB storage device by operating the operator panel.

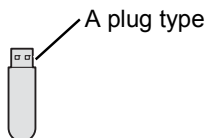
IMPORTANT:

- To prevent damage to your printer, DO NOT connect any device other than USB storage device to the USB drive of the printer.
- DO NOT remove the USB storage device from the USB drive until the printer has finished printing.

NOTE:

- If the Service Lock setting for Print from USB is set to Password Locked or Color Password Locked, you need to enter the four digit passcode to use the Print from USB feature. If the Service Lock setting for Print from USB is set to Locked, the Print from USB feature is disabled and the menu is not displayed on the screen. For details, see "Service Lock" on page 236.

The USB drive of the printer is designed for USB 2.0 devices. You must use only an authorized USB storage device with an A plug type connector. Use only a metal shielded USB storage device.

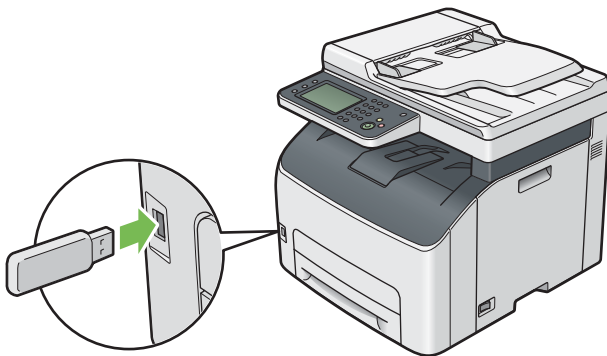


To print a file in a USB storage device:

- 1 Press the  (**Services Home**) button.
- 2 Insert the USB storage device into the USB drive of the printer.

NOTE:

- If the USB Drive Detected menu appears, select Print a File, and proceed to step 4.



- 3 Select Print from USB.
- 4 Select the desired file, and then select OK.

NOTE:

- Some characters may not be displayed correctly on the operator panel.

- 5 Select printing options as required.
- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to start printing.

NOTE:

- Color printing is secured with a passcode if the Service Lock setting for Print from USB is set to Color Password Locked. If you set Output Color to Full Color and the Service Lock setting for Print from USB to Color Password Locked, you will need to enter the four digit passcode after pressing the  (**Start**) button.
- You can print files scanned and stored using the Scan To USB feature. Files saved without using the feature such as files created by user may not be printed properly.

IMPORTANT:

- Before removing the USB storage device, ensure that the printer is not accessing the USB storage device. If you remove the USB storage device while the printer is accessing, the data in the USB storage device or the USB storage device itself may be damaged.

Supported File Formats

Files in the following file formats, created using the Scan To USB feature, are supported and can be printed directly from the USB storage device.

- PDF
- TIFF
- JPEG

NOTE:

- Files created without using the Scan To USB feature may not be printed properly.

■ Selecting Printing Options

For information on PostScript 3 Compatible driver printing for Mac OS X, refer to the PostScript 3 Compatible User Guide.

Selecting Printing Preferences (Windows)

Printing preferences control all of your print jobs, unless you override them specifically for a job. For example, if you want to use duplex printing for most jobs, set this option in printing preferences.

To select printing preferences:

- 1 For Windows Server 2003, click **Start** → **Printers and Faxes**.
For Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2, click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
For Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008, click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
For Windows 8 and Windows 8.1, on the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**. Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Devices and Printers**.
For Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2, on the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**. Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware** → **Devices and Printers**.
A list of available printers appears.
- 2 Right-click the icon for your printer, and then select **Printing preferences**.
The printer's **Printing Preferences** screen appears.
- 3 Make selections on the driver tabs, and then click **OK** to save your selections.

NOTE:

- For more information about Windows print driver options, click **Help** on the print driver.

Selecting Options for an Individual Job (Windows)

If you want to use special printing options for a particular job, change the driver settings before sending the job to the printer. For example, if you want to use Photo print-quality mode for a particular graphic, select this setting in the driver before printing that job.

- 1 With the desired document or graphic open in your application, access the **Print** dialog box.
- 2 Select your printer and click **Preferences** to open the print driver.
- 3 Make selections on the driver tabs.

NOTE:

- When using the PCL or PostScript 3 Compatible driver, you can save current printing options with a distinctive name and apply them to other print jobs. Select either the **Paper/Output**, **Graphics**, **Layout**, **Watermark/Forms**, or **Advanced** tab, and then click **Save** under **Favorites** on the **Paper/Output** tab. Click **Help** for more information.
- 4 Click **OK** to save your selections.

5 Print the job.

See the following table for specific printing options:

The table shown below uses the PCL driver as an example.

Printing Options for Windows

Driver Tab	Printing Options
Paper/Output tab	• Job Type – Setup • Favorites – Save – Edit • Duplex • Output Color • Copies – Collated • Paper Summary • Paper Size • Paper Type • Feed Orientation • Print as Bitmap • Envelope/Paper Setup Navigator • Printer Status • Restore Defaults
Graphics tab	• Output Color • Image Adjustment Mode • Image Types • Screen • Toner Saving Mode • Gray Guaranteed • Image Settings • Color Balance • Profile Settings • Restore Defaults
Layout tab	• Image Orientation • Multiple Up • Booklet / Poster / Mixed Document • Output Size • Reduce / Enlarge • Margin Shift/Margin • Restore Defaults

Driver Tab	Printing Options
Watermarks/Forms tab	• Watermarks – New Text – New Bitmap – Edit – Delete – First Page Only • Forms – Off – Create / Register Forms – Image Overlay – File Name – Browse • Header / Footer Options • Restore Defaults
Advanced tab	• Items • Settings for • Font Settings • Restore Defaults

■ Printing on Custom Size Paper

This section explains how to print on custom size paper using the print driver.

The way to load custom size paper is the same as the one to load standard size paper.

See also:

- "Loading Print Media in the Standard 150 Sheet Tray" on page 96
- "Setting Paper Sizes and Types" on page 104

For information on PostScript 3 Compatible driver printing for Mac OS X, refer to the PostScript 3 Compatible User Guide.

Defining Custom Paper Sizes

Before printing, set the custom size on the print driver.

NOTE:

- When setting the paper size on the print driver and the operator panel, be sure to specify the same size as the actual print media used. Setting the wrong size for printing can cause printer failure. This is especially true if you configure a bigger size when using a narrow width paper.

• Using the Windows Print Driver

On the Windows print driver, set the custom size in the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box. This section explains the procedure using Windows 7 as an example.

An administrator's password only allows users with administrator rights to change the settings. Users without administrator rights can only view the contents.

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer, and then select **Printer properties**.
- 3 Select the **Configuration** tab.
- 4 Click **Custom Paper Size**.
- 5 Select the custom setup you want to define from **Details**.

- 6 Specify the length of the short edge and long edge under **Change Setting For**.
You can specify the values either by entering them directly or using the up arrow and down arrow buttons. The length of the short edge cannot be longer than the long edge even if it is within the specified range. The length of the long edge cannot be shorter than the short edge even if it is within the specified range.
- 7 To assign a paper name, select the **Name the Paper Size** check box, and then enter the name in **Paper Name**. Up to 24 characters can be used for the paper name.
- 8 If necessary, repeat steps 5 to 7 to define another custom size.
- 9 Click **OK** twice.

Printing on Custom Size Paper

Use the following procedures to print using the Windows print driver.

• Using the Windows Print Driver

This section explains the procedure using Windows 7 as an example.

NOTE:

- The way to display the printer **Properties/Printing Preferences** dialog box differs according to the application software. Refer to the manual of your respective application software.
- 1 From the application menu, select **Print**.
 - 2 Select your printer and click **Preferences**.
 - 3 Select the **Paper/Output** tab.
 - 4 Select the size of the document to be printed from **Paper Size**.
 - 5 Select the paper type to be used from **Paper Type**.
 - 6 Click the **Layout** tab.
 - 7 From **Output Size**, select the custom size you defined. If you have selected the custom size from **Paper Size** in step 4, select **Same as Paper Size**.
 - 8 Click **OK**.
 - 9 Click **Print** in the **Print** dialog box to start printing.

■ Checking Status of Print Job

Checking Status via the SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)

You can check the printer status and print job status with the SimpleMonitor.

See also:

- "SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)" on page 40

For more information about the SimpleMonitor, see Help:

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **SimpleMonitor-Ctype for Asia-Pacific**.
The window to select a printer appears.
- 2 Click the name of the desired printer from the list.
The **Printer Status** window appears.
- 3 Click **Help**.

Checking Status via the CentreWare Internet Services

You can check the status of the print job sent to the printer at the **Jobs** tab of the CentreWare Internet Services.

See also:

- "CentreWare Internet Services" on page 38

■ Printing With Wi-Fi Direct

This section provides information for Wi-Fi Direct[®] printing. Wi-Fi Direct allows your Wi-Fi[®] mobile devices such as computers, smart phones, and tablets, to connect to the printer directly via a Wi-Fi network. With Wi-Fi Direct, you can print documents, photos, or e-mail on your Wi-Fi mobile devices directly without a wireless access point.

NOTE:

- Wi-Fi Direct supports only IPv4 connection.
- Only printing function is available via the Wi-Fi Direct network.
- The maximum number of devices that can be connected via the Wi-Fi Direct network is one.
- You cannot connect your mobile device to the Internet via the printer's Wi-Fi Direct network.
- Depending on the device, the channel used to connect the device to the printer via Wi-Fi Direct may differ from the channel used by the printer to connect to a network via Wi-Fi infrastructure mode. In such a case, simultaneous connection with Wi-Fi Direct and Wi-Fi infrastructure mode may not work properly.
- The printer connected with Wi-Fi Direct supports the following protocols; LPD, Port9100, WSD (Web Services on Devices) (print), Bonjour (mDNS), SNMPv1/v2c, CentreWare Internet Services.

Setting Up Wi-Fi Direct

To use Wi-Fi Direct, you need to first set up the Wi-Fi Direct settings from the operator panel of the printer. To connect the mobile device to the printer via Wi-Fi Direct, you need to operate the mobile device to establish connection.

• Setting Up the Printer

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then tap **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select **Network**.
- 4 Select **Wi-Fi Direct**.
- 5 In the **Wi-Fi Direct** menu, select **Wi-Fi Direct**.

- 6 Select **Enable**, and then select **OK**.

When you use a Wi-Fi Direct certified mobile device (including the device with the Wi-Fi Direct PIN function), proceed to step 9.

When you use a mobile device that is not Wi-Fi Direct certified, or mobile device with WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup™-Push Button Configuration), WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number), proceed to step 7.

- 7 Select **Group Role**.
- 8 Select **Group Owner**, and then select **OK**.

For a mobile device with WPS-PBC

- a Select **WPS Setup**.
- b Select **Push Button Configuration**.

The printer is ready to use the WPS-PBC connection.

For a mobile device with WPS-PIN

- a Select **WPS Setup**.
- b Select **PIN Code** to check the PIN code.

The printer is ready to use the WPS-PIN connection.

NOTE:

- To confirm the printer's PIN code, you can also print the list by selecting **Print PIN Code** under the **WPS Setup** menu.

- 9 Select **Connection Status**.
- 10 Confirm no device is connected with the Wi-Fi Direct connection.

NOTE:

- When other device is connected (the mobile device name is displayed on **Connection Status**), you cannot use the Wi-Fi Direct connection. Disconnect the other device from the Wi-Fi Direct network. For details, see "Disconnecting Wi-Fi Direct Network" on page 118.

The printer is ready to use the Wi-Fi Direct connection.

• Connecting a Wi-Fi Direct Certified Mobile Device

The following is a typical procedure for connecting a mobile device to the printer using Wi-Fi Direct. The procedure varies depending on the mobile device you are using. Refer to the manual provided with your mobile device.

- 1 From the mobile device, start the procedure to connect using Wi-Fi Direct.
- 2 Accept the invitation for Wi-Fi Direct connection displayed on the touch panel of the printer.

NOTE:

- If you want to change the printer's group role of the Wi-Fi Direct network, select `Group Role` under the `Wi-Fi Direct` menu.

• Connecting a Wi-Fi Direct Certified Mobile Device With PIN Code

The following is a typical procedure for connecting a mobile device to the printer using Wi-Fi Direct PIN code. The procedure varies depending on the mobile device you are using. Refer to the manual provided with your mobile device.

NOTE:

- Before you connect the mobile device to the printer, confirm that `WPS Setup` is set to `PIN Code`.

- 1 From the mobile device, start the procedure to connect using Wi-Fi Direct PIN code.
When the mobile device tries to connect through the Wi-Fi Direct network using the PIN code, the following pop-up message is displayed on the operator panel.
PIN Code: XXXXXXXX
- 2 Input the PIN code to your mobile device.
- 3 Accept the invitation for Wi-Fi Direct connection displayed on the touch panel of the printer.

• Connecting a Mobile Device That is not Wi-Fi Direct Certified

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.
- 3 Select `Network`.
- 4 Select `Wi-Fi Direct`.
- 5 Select  until `SSID` and `Passphrase` appears, and then select each menu to check what the SSID and passphrase is.

NOTE:

- To confirm the printer's SSID and passphrase, you can also print the list by selecting `Print Passphrase` under the `Passphrase` menu.

- 6 Connect the mobile device to the Wi-Fi Direct network.
For Windows 8, Windows 8.1, Windows RT, and Windows RT 8.1
 - a Tap **Settings** in the **PC settings** menu.
 - b Tap the Wi-Fi icon.
 - c Tap the printer's SSID, and then tap **Connect**.
 - d Enter the passphrase, and then tap **Next**.
The mobile device will connect to the printer.

For Windows 7

- a Click the network icon on the taskbar.
- b Click the printer's SSID, and then click **Connect**.
- c Enter the passphrase, and then click **OK**.
- d Click **Cancel** to exit the **Set Network Location** window.

The mobile device will connect to the printer.

For Windows Vista

- a Click **Start** → **Connect To**.
- b Click the printer's SSID.
- c Enter the passphrase, and then click **Connect**.

The mobile device will connect to the printer.

For iOS

- a Tap **Settings** → **Wi-Fi**.
- b Tap the printer's SSID.
- c Enter the passphrase, and then tap **Join**.

The mobile device will connect to the printer.

For Android™

The procedure varies depending on the mobile device you are using. Refer to the manual provided with your mobile device.

7 Install the printer on the mobile device.

For Windows 8, Windows 8.1, Windows RT, and Windows RT 8.1

- a Tap **Devices** in the **PC settings** menu.
- b Tap **Add a device** in the **Devices** sub-menu.
- c Tap **DIRECT-XXXXX**.

The printer is ready for use.

For Windows Vista and Windows 7

You need to install the print driver on the mobile device. For details, see "Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Windows" on page 60.

For iOS

You need to install the printing application such as Print Utility for iOS, and then the printer is ready for use.

For Android

You need to install the printing application such as Fuji Xerox Print Utility for Android, and then the printer is ready for use.

• Connecting a Mobile Device With WPS-PBC and WPS-PIN

The following is a typical procedure for connecting a mobile device to the printer using WPS-PBC or WPS-PIN. The procedure varies depending on the mobile device you are using. Refer to the manual provided with your mobile device.

- 1 From the mobile device, start the procedure to connect using the WPS-PBC or WPS-PIN.
The procedure varies depending on the mobile device you are using. Refer to the manual provided with your mobile device.
- 2 Accept the invitation for Wi-Fi Direct connection using the printer on the operator panel.

Printing via Wi-Fi Direct

The printing procedure varies depending on the mobile device you are using. Refer to the manual provided with your mobile device to print as you normally do from the device.

Disconnecting Wi-Fi Direct Network

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Wi-Fi Status`.
- 3 Select the device name to disconnect.
- 4 Select `Disconnect Now` or `Disconnect and Reset Passphrase`.

NOTE:

- If the mobile device automatically reconnects to the printer, select `Disconnect and Reset Passphrase`.

- 5 Select `Yes`.
The selected device is successfully disconnected.

You can also disconnect the device from the following steps.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.
- 3 Select `Network`.
- 4 Select `Wi-Fi Direct`.
- 5 Select `Connection Status`.
- 6 Select the device name to disconnect.
- 7 Select `Disconnect now`.
- 8 Select `Yes`.

Resetting the Passphrase

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.
- 3 Select `Network`.
- 4 Select `Wi-Fi Direct`.
- 5 Select  until `Passphrase` appears, and then select `Passphrase`.
- 6 Select `ResetPassphrase`.
- 7 Select `Yes`.
The Wi-Fi Direct is disconnected and the passphrase is reset.

■ Mobile Printing

This printer supports printing from a variety of mobile devices using the Fuji Xerox Print Utility for Android or Print Utility for iOS.

For Android OS, download for free from Google Play™, or please visit our online support at <http://www.fxap.com.sg/product/productDescription.jsp?id=174>

For iOS, download for free from App Store, or please visit our online support at <http://www.fxap.com.sg/product/productDescription.jsp?id=166>

■ Printing With AirPrint



This section provides information for printing with AirPrint. AirPrint allows you to print through a network with iPad (all models), iPhone (3GS or later), and iPod touch (3rd generation or later) running the latest version of iOS. AirPrint also allows you to accomplish basic network printing with Macintosh (Mac OS X 10.7 or later) without installing additional drivers.

Setting Up AirPrint on Your Printer

To use AirPrint, Bonjour (mDNS) and IPP protocols are required on your printer. Make sure that **Bonjour (mDNS)** and **IPP** are set to **Enable** on the operator panel menu. For details, see "IPsec" on page 218. **Bonjour (mDNS)** and **IPP** can also be enabled by selecting the **Enabled** check box for **Enable AirPrint** from the CentreWare Internet Services. Follow the procedure below to configure the environment settings for AirPrint from the CentreWare Internet Services.

- 1 Confirm that the printer is connected to the network.
- 2 Launch the CentreWare Internet Services by entering the IP address of the printer in your web browser.
- 3 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 4 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Protocol Settings** and click **AirPrint**.
- 5 Select the **Enabled** check box for **Enable AirPrint**.

NOTE:

- If the **Enabled** check box is not active, it means that both **Bonjour (mDNS)** and **IPP** are already set to **Enable** on the operator panel menu and the printer is ready for AirPrint.

- 6 Click **Apply**.
- 7 Click **Reboot Machine** to restart the printer.
The printer is ready for AirPrint.

Printing via AirPrint

The following procedure uses the iPhone running iOS 7 as an example.

- 1 Open your e-mail, photo, web page, or document you want to print.
- 2 Tap the action icon .
- 3 Tap **Print**.
- 4 Select your printer and set printer options.
- 5 Tap **Print**.

NOTE:

- To cancel the printing job, double-click the **Home** button, tap the **Print Center** icon . If there are more than one job in the queue, select the job you want to cancel, then tap **Cancel Printing**.

■ Printing With Google Cloud Print

This section provides information for Google Cloud Print™ service with your smart phone, tablet, or any other device. By registering the printer to your Google™ account, you can use the Google Cloud Print service to print from various devices connected to the Internet. You can print documents, photos or e-mails using the Google Chrome™ browser or applications such as Google Drive™ on your mobile device. For more information about Google Cloud Print, visit the Google web site.

Preparing to Use the Printer with Google Cloud Print

To use Google Cloud Print, you need to prepare the following in advance:

- Connect the printer to a network that has access to the Internet.

NOTE:

- Google Cloud Print supports only IPv4 connection.
- If the printer is connected to a network that uses a proxy server, you need to specify the settings in Proxy Server from the CentreWare Internet Services. For more information, see "CentreWare Internet Services" on page 38.
- Acquire a Google account and a Gmail™ address.
- Set `Google Cloud Print` to `Enable` from the operator panel menu, or set **GCP** to **Enabled** from the CentreWare Internet Services.

• When using the operator panel

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.
- 3 Select `Network`.
- 4 Select `Protocols`.
- 5 Select  until `Google Cloud Print` appears, and then select `Google Cloud Print`.
- 6 Select `Enable`.
- 7 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

• When using the CentreWare Internet Services

- 1 Launch the CentreWare Internet Services by entering IP address of the printer in your web browser. For more information, see "CentreWare Internet Services" on page 38.
- 2 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 3 In the left navigation panel, click **Port Status**.
- 4 Select the **Enabled** check box for **GCP**.
- 5 Click **Apply**.
- 6 Click **Reboot Machine** to restart the printer.
The printer is ready for Google Cloud Print.

Registering the Printer to Your Google Account

To register the printer to your Google account, follow the procedure below.

- 1 Launch the CentreWare Internet Services by entering IP address of the printer in your web browser. For more information, see "CentreWare Internet Services" on page 38.
- 2 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 3 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Protocol Settings** and click **Google Cloud Print**.
- 4 Click **Register This Device to Google Cloud Print**.
A sheet with a URL for the Google Cloud Print printer registration web site is printed.
- 5 From the web browser of your computer, visit the Google web site and sign in with your Google account. Visit the Google Cloud Print registration web site by entering the URL on the printout into your web browser. You can also visit the site by scanning the QR code with your mobile device.
- 6 On the Google Cloud Print registration web site, click **Finish printer registration**.
- 7 Click **Manage your printers**. Your printer will be listed in the **Printers** list and will be ready for use with the Google Cloud Print service.

Printing via Google Cloud Print

The printing procedure varies depending on the application or the device you are using. You can see the application list that supports Google Cloud Print service on the Google web site.

• Printing From an Application on a Mobile Device

The following procedure uses the Google Drive application on an Android mobile device as an example.

- 1 Install the Google Drive application on your mobile device.
NOTE:
 - You can download the application from Google Play.
- 2 Access the Google Drive application from your mobile device and tap  to select the document.
- 3 Tap  and then tap **Print**.
- 4 Select your printer from the list.
- 5 Select printer options and then tap **Print**.

• Printing From Google Chrome

The following procedure uses the Google Chrome browser on a Windows PC as an example.

- 1 Open the Google Chrome browser.
- 2 Open the web page or e-mail that you want to print.
- 3 Click  or  (varies depending on the version of the Google Chrome browser) in the top right corner and then click **Print**.
- 4 Click **Change** in the **Destination** area.
- 5 Choose your printer from the Google Cloud Print area.
- 6 Click **Print**.

■ Printing a Report Page

You can print various types of reports and lists. For details on each report and list, see "Report / List" on page 206. This section describes how to print a report page using the System Settings page as an example.

Printing a System Settings Page

To verify detailed printer settings, print a System Settings page.

• Using the Operator Panel

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Report / List`.
- 3 Select `System Settings`, and then select `Print`.
The System Settings page is printed.

• Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.
NOTE:
 - The window to select a printer appears in this step when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.
The Printer Setting Utility appears.
- 2 Click the **Printer Settings Report** tab.
- 3 Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **Reports** page is displayed.
- 4 Click **System Settings**.
The System Settings page is printed.

■ Printer Settings

Using the Operator Panel to Change the Printer Settings

You can select menu items and corresponding values from the operator panel.

When you first browse through the menus from the operator panel, a list of menu items is displayed. The values displayed for each menu item are the factory default and original system settings.

When you select a new value or setting in the menu item, the newly selected value or setting is displayed to indicate the current user setting.

NOTE:

- Factory defaults may vary for different regions.
- These settings are active until new ones are selected or the factory defaults are restored.
- The print driver settings may have precedence over the settings made on the operator panel.

To select a new value as a setting:

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select the desired menu.
- 3 Select the desired menu or menu item.
 - If a menu is selected, the menu is opened and the list of menu items appears.
 - If a menu item is selected, the default menu setting for the menu item appears.

Each menu item has a list of values for the menu item. A value can be:

- A phrase or word to describe a setting
- A numerical value that can be changed
- An On or Off setting

- 4 Select the desired value.

NOTE:

- Some menu items require you to use the screen keyboard or the number pad to enter the value.

- 5 Select **OK**.
- 6 Select  to return to the previous menu.

To continue setting other items, select the desired menu. To quit setting new values, select .

Using the Printer Setting Utility to Change the Printer Settings (Windows Only)

You can select menu items and corresponding values from the Printer Setting Utility.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

NOTE:

- Factory defaults may vary for different regions.
- These settings are active until new ones are selected or the factory defaults are restored.
- The print driver settings may have precedence over the settings made on the Printer Settings Utility.

To select a new value as a setting:

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility appears.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select the desired menu item.
Each menu item has a list of values for the menu item. A value can be:
 - A phrase or word to describe a setting
 - A numerical value that can be changed
 - An On or Off setting
- 4 Select the desired value, and then click **Apply New Settings** or **Restart printer to apply new settings**.

Adjusting the Language

To display a different language on the operator panel:

• Using the Operator Panel

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Language Settings**.
- 3 Select **Panel Settings**, and then select desired language.
- 4 Select **OK**.

• Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility appears.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **System Settings** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **System Settings** page is displayed.
- 4 Select the desired language from **Panel Language**, and then click **Apply New Settings**.

Copying

- "Loading Paper for Copying" on page 126
- "Preparing a Document" on page 127
- "Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 128
- "Making Copies From the ADF" on page 130
- "Setting Copy Options" on page 131
- "Using the ID Card Copy" on page 137
- "Changing the Default Settings" on page 138

Loading Paper for Copying

The instructions for loading print media are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying.

See also:

- "Usable Print Media" on page 95
- "Loading Print Media" on page 96

Preparing a Document

You can use the document glass or the automatic document feeder (ADF) to load an original document for copying, scanning and sending a fax. You can load up to 15 sheets of 64 gsm documents for one job using the ADF or one sheet at a time using the document glass.

IMPORTANT:

- Avoid loading documents that are smaller than 148.0 × 210.0 mm (5.83 × 8.27 inch) or larger than 215.9 × 355.6 mm (8.5 × 14 inch), different sizes or weights together, booklets, pamphlets, transparencies, or documents having other unusual characteristics in ADF.
- Carbon-paper or carbon-backed paper, coated paper, onion skin or thin paper, wrinkled or creased paper, curled or rolled paper or torn paper cannot be used in ADF.
- Do not use the documents with staples, paper clips or exposed to adhesives or solvent based materials such as glue, ink and correcting fluid in ADF.

NOTE:

- To get the best scan quality, especially for color or gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the ADF.

Making Copies From the Document Glass

NOTE:

- A computer connection is not required for copying.
- Make sure that no document is in the ADF. If any document is detected in the ADF, it takes priority over the document on the document glass.
- Dust on the document glass may cause black spots on the copies. For best results, clean the document glass before use. For more information, see "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 317.

To make a copy from the document glass:

- 1 Open the document cover.

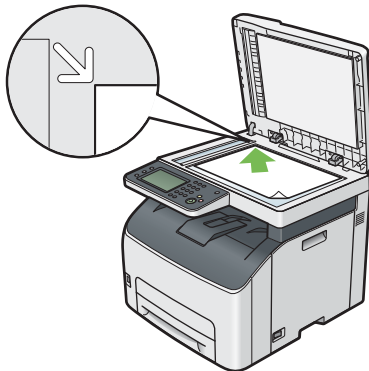


- 2 Place the document facing down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the document glass.



CAUTION:

- Do not apply excessive force to hold thick document on the document glass. It may break the glass and cause injuries.



- 3 Close the document cover.

NOTE:

- Leaving the document cover open while copying may affect the copy quality and increase the toner consumption.
- If you are copying a page from a book or magazine, lift the document cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper, and then close the document cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 20 mm, start copying with the document cover open.

- 4 Press the  (**Services Home**) button.

To simply make a copy without changing the default copy settings, proceed to step 8.

- 5 Select **Copy**.

- 6** Customize the copy settings such as the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

See also:

- "Setting Copy Options" on page 131

To clear the settings, press the  (**Clear All**) button.

NOTE:

- The copy options automatically return to their default status after the auto clear timer is expired.

- 7** Enter the number of copies from 1 to 99 using the number pad.

- 8** Press the  (**Start**) button to start copying.

NOTE:

- Press the  (**Stop**) button to cancel a copy job at any time while scanning a document.

Making Copies From the ADF

IMPORTANT:

- Do not load more than 15 sheets on the ADF or allow more than 15 sheets to be fed to the document output tray. The document output tray should be emptied before it holds more than 15 sheets or your source documents may be damaged.

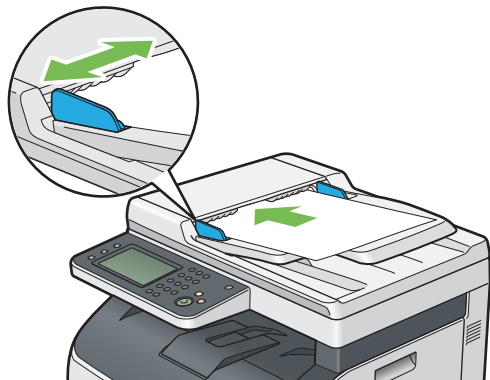
NOTE:

- To get the best scan quality, especially for color or gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the ADF.
- A computer connection is not required for copying.
- You cannot load the following documents in the ADF. Be sure to place them on the document glass.

 Curled originals	 Pre-punched paper
 Lightweight originals	 Folded, creased or torn originals
 Cut and paste originals	 Carbon paper

To make copy from the ADF:

- 1 Load up to 15 sheets of 64 gsm documents facing up on the ADF with top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the correct document size.



NOTE:

- Be sure to adjust the document guides before copying a legal-size document.

- 2 Press the  (**Services Home**) button.
To simply make a copy without changing the default copy settings, proceed to step 6.
- 3 Select **Copy**.
- 4 Customize the copy settings such as number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

See also:

- "Setting Copy Options" on page 131

To clear the settings, press the  (**Clear All**) button.

NOTE:

- The copy options automatically return to their default status after the auto clear timer is expired.

- 5 Enter the number of copies from 1 to 99 using the number pad.
- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to start copying.

NOTE:

- Press the  (**Stop**) button to cancel a copy job at any time while scanning a document.

Setting Copy Options

Set the following options for the current copy job before pressing the  (**Start**) button to start copying.
For details about making copies, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 128 and "Making Copies From the ADF" on page 130.

NOTE:

- The copy options automatically return to their default status after the auto clear timer is expired.

■ Output Color

To select the mode for color or black and white copying.

- 1 Select `Output Color`.
- 2 Select `Full Color` or `Black & White`, and then select `OK`.

■ Lighten / Darken

To adjust the contrast to make the copy lighter or darker than the original.

- 1 Select `Lighten / Darken`.
- 2 Select the desired level on the `Lighten / Darken` bar, and then select `OK`.

You can select a contrast level from five levels between `Darken` and `Lighten`.

Selecting a cell on the left side of the bar makes the document contrast darker, and selecting a cell on the right side of the bar makes the document contrast lighter.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

<code>Lighten +2</code>	Works well with dark documents.
<code>Lighten +1</code>	
<code>Normal*</code>	Works well with normal typed or printed documents.
<code>Darken +1</code>	Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.
<code>Darken +2</code>	

■ Document Type

To select the copy image quality.

- 1 Select the `Quality` tab, and then select `Document Type`.
- 2 Select the desired setting, and then select `OK`.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

<code>Mixed*</code>	Used for documents with photos and text.
<code>Text</code>	Used for documents with text.
<code>Photo</code>	Used for documents with photos.

■ Sharpness

To adjust the sharpness to make the copy image sharper or softer than the original.

- 1 Select the **Quality** tab, and then select **Sharpness**.
- 2 Select the desired setting, and then select **OK**.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

Sharpen2	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
Sharpen1	
Normal*	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
Soften1	Makes the copy softer than the original.
Soften2	

■ Auto Background Suppression

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

- 1 Select the **Quality** tab, and then select **Auto Background Suppression**.
- 2 Select the desired setting, and then select **OK**.

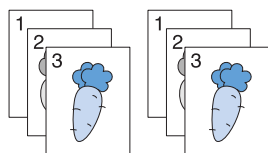
NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

Off
On*

■ Collated

To sort the copy output. For example, if you make two sets of a three-page document, the first set will be printed followed by the second set.



- 1 Select the **Output** tab, and then select **Collated**.
- 2 Select the desired setting, and then select **OK**.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

Uncollated*	Does not copy in collated order.
Collated	Copies in collated order.

When you are using the document glass and it is set to **Collated**, the display prompts you for another page after pressing the  (**Start**) button.

- a If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then select **Scan Another Page** or press the  (**Start**) button.
- b If you finish copying, select **Done. Print Now.**

■ Reduce / Enlarge

To reduce or enlarge the size of a copied image from 25 to 400% when you copy original documents from the document glass or the ADF.

NOTE:

- When you make a reduced copy, black lines may appear at the bottom of your copy.

- 1 Select the **Output** tab, and then select **Reduce/Enlarge**.
- 2 Select the desired setting, and then select **OK**.

• mm series

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

100%*
50%
70%
A4→A5
81%
B5→A5
122%
A5→B5
141%
A5→A4
200%

• inch series

100%*
50%
64%
78%
8.5 × 14" → 8.5 × 11"
129%
154%
8.5 × 11" → 8.5 × 14"
200%

NOTE:

- You can also specify the value in increments of 1% from 25 to 400 by selecting **+** or **-** or entering a value using the number pad. See the following table for specific zoom ratios.

Copy	A5	B5	A4
Original			
A5	100%	122%	141%
B5	81%	100%	115%
A4	70%	86%	100%

The method to load print media vary depends on the size and orientation of the print media, "Loading Print Media in the Standard 150 Sheet Tray" on page 96.

For print media that can be loaded, refer to "Usable Print Media" on page 95.

■ Document Size

To select the default document size.

- 1 Select the `Output` tab, and then select `Document Size`.
- 2 Select the desired setting, and then select `OK`.

• mm series

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

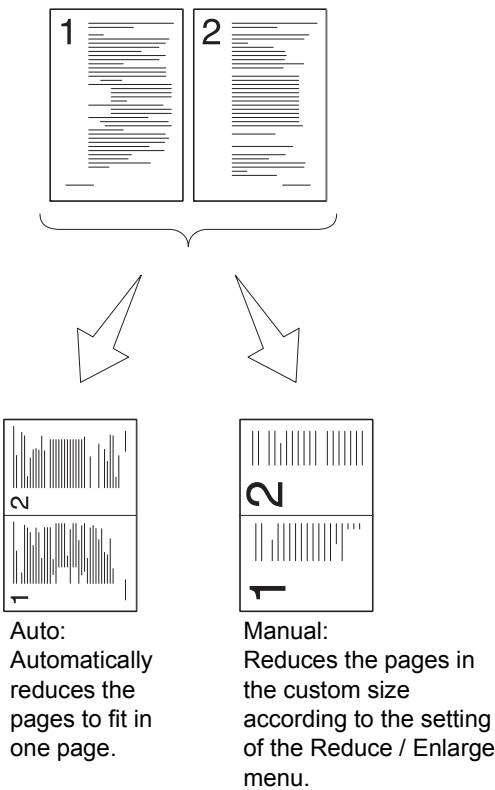
A4*
A5
B5
8.5 × 11"
8.5 × 13"
8.5 × 14"
7.25 × 10.5"

• inch series

8.5 × 11"*
8.5 × 13"
8.5 × 14"
A4
A5
B5
7.25 × 10.5"

■ N-Up

To copy two original images to fit into one sheet of paper.



- 1 Select the **Output** tab, and then select **N-Up**.
- 2 Select the desired setting, and then select **OK**.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

Off*	Does not perform pages per sheet printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit into one sheet of paper.
Manual	Prints the original pages into the one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce/Enlarge.

When you are using the document glass and it is set to **Auto** or **Manual**, the display prompts you for another page after pressing the **Start** button.

- a If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then select **Scan Another Page** or press the **Start** button.
- b If you finish copying, select **Done. Print Now.**

■ Edge Erase

To specify the top and bottom margins of the copy.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

- 1 Select the Output tab.
- 2 Select  until Edge Erase appears, and then select Edge Erase.
- 3 Select  or , or use the number pad to enter the desired value.

Top / Bottom (0 → 50 mm) (0 → 2.0 inch)	4 mm* (0.2 inch*)	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm (0.1 inch).
Left / Right (0 → 50 mm) (0 → 2.0 inch)	4 mm* (0.2 inch*)	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm (0.1 inch).
Middle (0 → 50 mm) (0 → 2.0 inch)	0 mm* (0 inch*)	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm (0.1 inch).

Using the ID Card Copy

NOTE:

- If the `Service Lock` setting for `ID Card Copy` is set to `Locked`, the ID Card Copy function is disabled and the menu is not displayed on the screen. For details, see "Service Lock" on page 236.

You can copy both sides of an ID card on one side of a single sheet of paper in its original size by selecting `ID Card Copy` on the touch panel. This feature helps to show both sides of an ID card in one page in its original size.

To make a copy:

- 1 Place an ID card facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.
For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 128.
- 2 Press the  (**Services Home**) button.
- 3 Select `ID Card Copy`.
- 4 Specify the copy settings below as required.
 - Output Color
 - Lighten / Darken
 - Sharpness
 - Auto Background Suppression

See also:

- "Setting Copy Options" on page 131

- 5 Press the  (**Start**) button to start copying.
After the front side of the ID card is scanned, the display prompts you to turn over the card.
To scan the back side of the ID card, turn the ID card over and select `Scan Side 2`.

NOTE:

- Color copy is secured with a password if the `Service Lock` setting for `Copy` is set to `Color Password Locked`. If you set `Output Color` to `Full Color` and the `Service Lock` setting for `Copy` to `Color Password Locked`, you will need to enter the four digit password after pressing the  (**Start**) button.

Changing the Default Settings

The default settings of the Copy menu options such as `Output Color` and `Lighten / Darken` can be set to the most frequently used modes. When you copy a document, the specified default settings are used unless they are changed by using the operator panel.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the `Tools` tab.
- 3 Select `Default Settings`.
- 4 Select desired menu item.
- 5 Select the desired setting or enter the value using the number pad, and then select `OK`.
- 6 Repeat steps 4 and 5 as needed.
- 7 To return to the top level of the System menu, press the  (**Clear All**) button.

Scanning

- "Scanning Overview" on page 140
- "Scanning to a Computer" on page 141
- "Scanning to a Computer or Server via SMB/FTP" on page 145
- "Scanning to a USB Storage Device" on page 163
- "Sending an E-mail With the Scanned Image" on page 165
- "Adjusting Scanning Options" on page 168

Scanning Overview

You can use your printer to turn pictures and text into editable images on your computer.

The resolution setting to use when you scan an item depends on the item type and how you plan to use the image or document after you scan it into your computer. For the best results, use these recommended settings.

Type	Resolution
Documents	300 dpi black-and-white or 200 dpi grayscale or color
Documents of poor quality or that contain small text	400 dpi black-and-white or 300 dpi grayscale
Photographs and pictures	100 – 200 dpi color or 200 dpi grayscale
Images for an inkjet printer	150 – 300 dpi
Images for a high-resolution printer	300 – 600 dpi

Scanning beyond these recommended resolutions may exceed the capabilities of the application. If you require a recommended resolution mentioned in the above table, reduce the size of the image by previewing (or pre-scan) and crop it before scanning the image.

■ Scanning - From Computer

- To scan and export the scanned data to a graphic software application such as the Adobe® Photoshop® using the TWAIN driver, see "Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver" on page 143. This method is supported both on the Microsoft® Windows® and Mac OS X operating systems but requires a USB or network connection and a graphic software application.
- To scan and export the scanned data to Microsoft's program such as the Windows Photo Gallery and the Microsoft Paint, using the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver, see "Scanning Using the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) Driver" on page 144. This method is supported only on the Windows operating system and requires a USB or network (Web Services on Devices (WSD) only) connection.

■ Scanning - From Printer

- To scan and send the scanned data to a computer connected with a USB cable, see "Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to Application" on page 141. This method is supported both on the Windows and Mac OS X operating systems but requires a USB connection and the Express Scan Manager, a bundled software tool. The scanned data will be saved in the location on your computer that is specified on the Express Scan Manager.
- To scan and send the scanned data to a computer connected to a network via Web Services on Devices (WSD), see "Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to WSD (Web Services on Devices)" on page 141.
- To scan and send the scanned data to a computer or server connected to a network, see "Sending the Scanned File to the Network" on page 162.
- To scan and save the scanned data onto a USB storage device, see "Scanning to a USB Storage Device" on page 163.
- To scan and send the scanned data through e-mail, see "Sending an E-mail With the Scanned Image" on page 165.

Scanning to a Computer

■ Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to Application

NOTE:

- Make sure that the printer is connected to the computer using the USB cable.
- You must use the Express Scan Manager on your computer to configure the output destination of the scanned image files.
- This service is supported both on the Windows and Mac OS X operating systems.

- 1 Load the top edge of document(s) with facing up into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

See also:

- "Making Copies From the ADF" on page 130
- "Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 128

- 2 Press the  (**Services Home**) button.

- 3 Select **Scan To**.

- 4 Select **PC**.

- 5 Configure the scanning settings as necessary.

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button.

A scanned image file is saved to the location you have specified.

NOTE:

- If the window to select the program appears on your computer, select **Express Scan Manager-Ctype**, and then click **OK**.
- File type of scanned data varies depending on application on computer.

See also:

- "Express Scan Manager" on page 43

■ Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to WSD (Web Services on Devices)

If the printer is connected to a computer via network using Web Services on Devices (WSD), you can use the Scan to WSD (Web Services on Devices) function to send scanned images to a computer.

NOTE:

- To use Scan to WSD (Web Services on Devices), you need to setup connection using Web Services on Devices (WSD).
- Web Services on Devices (WSD) is supported only on Windows Vista®, Windows Server® 2008, Windows 7, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 8, Windows Server 2012, Windows 8.1, and Windows Server 2012 R2.

Printer Setup for Scan to WSD (Web Services on Devices)

Setup the printer and computer for connection using Web Services on Devices (WSD).

• Checking the Printer Setting

To use the Scan to WSD (Web Services on Devices) function, **WSD (Web Services on Devices)** needs to be set to **Enable**. For details, see "Protocols" on page 219.

• Setting Up the Computer

NOTE:

- For Windows 8, Windows Server 2012, Windows 8.1, and Windows Server 2012 R2, a computer automatically connects the printer using Web Services on Devices (WSD). There is no need to install the printer manually.

For Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Computer** → **Network**.
- 2 Right-click the icon for the printer, and then click **Install**.
The printer is connected by Web Services on Devices (WSD).

For Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Network**.
- 2 Right-click the icon for the printer, and then click **Install**.
- 3 Click **Continue**.
The printer is connected by Web Services on Devices (WSD).

Procedures for WSD (Web Services on Devices) Scan

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass.

See also:

- "Making Copies From the ADF" on page 130
- "Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 128

- 2 Press the  (**Services Home**) button.
- 3 Select **Scan To**.
- 4 Select **WSD (Web Services on Devices)**.
- 5 Select  until the desired computer you want to send the scan job to appear, and then select that computer.
- 6 Select **Event**, and specify the type of scan.
Available types:
 - **Scan**
 - **ScanToPrint**
 - **ScanToEmail**
 - **ScanToFax**
 - **ScanToOCR**
- 7 Press the  (**Start**) button.

■ Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver

Your printer supports the Tool Without An Interesting Name (TWAIN) driver for scanning images. TWAIN is one of the standard components provided by Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2012, Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2012 R2, Mac OS X 10.5, Mac OS X 10.6, Mac OS X 10.7, OS X 10.8, OS X 10.9, and works with various scanners.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

NOTE:

- Make sure that the printer is connected to the computer with a USB cable or to a network.

The following procedure to scan an image uses Microsoft Clip Organizer as an example.

- 1 Load the top edge of document(s) with facing up into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

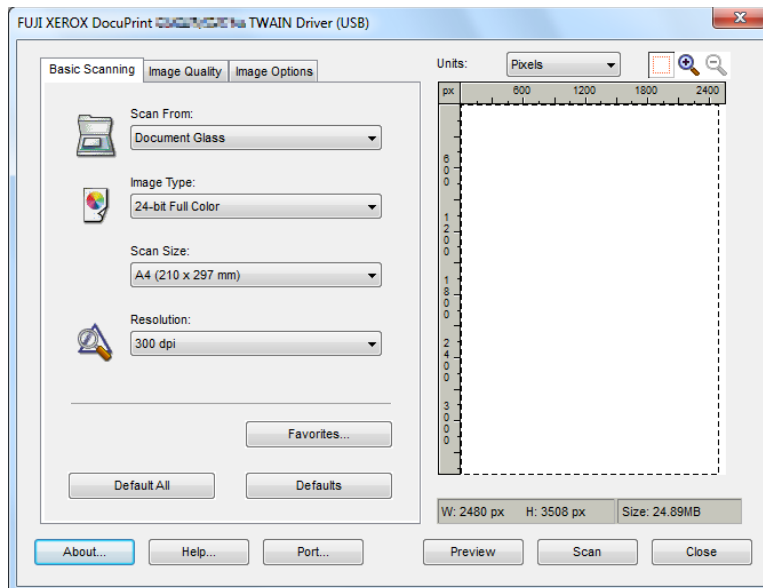
See also:

- "Making Copies From the ADF" on page 130
- "Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 128

- 2 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Microsoft Office** → **Microsoft Office 2010 Tools** → **Microsoft Clip Organizer**.
- 3 Click **File** → **Add Clips to Organizer** → **From Scanner or Camera**.
- 4 In the **Insert Picture from Scanner or Camera** window, under **Device**, select your TWAIN device.
- 5 Click **Custom Insert**.
- 6 Select your scanning preferences and click **Preview** to display the preview image.

NOTE:

- **Preview** is grayed out and disabled when you select **Document Feeder Tray** from **Scan From**.
- File type of scanned data vary depending on application on computer.



- 7 Select the desired properties from the **Image Quality** and **Image Options** tabs.
- 8 Click **Scan** to start scanning.
The scanned image file is generated.

■ Scanning Using the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) Driver

Your printer also supports the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver for scanning images. Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) is one of the standard components provided by Windows operating systems and works with digital cameras and scanners. Unlike the TWAIN driver, the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver allows you to scan an image and easily manipulate those images without using additional software.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

NOTE:

- Make sure that the printer is connected to the computer using the USB cable.

- 1 Load the top edge of document(s) with facing up into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

See also:

- "Making Copies From the ADF" on page 130
- "Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 128

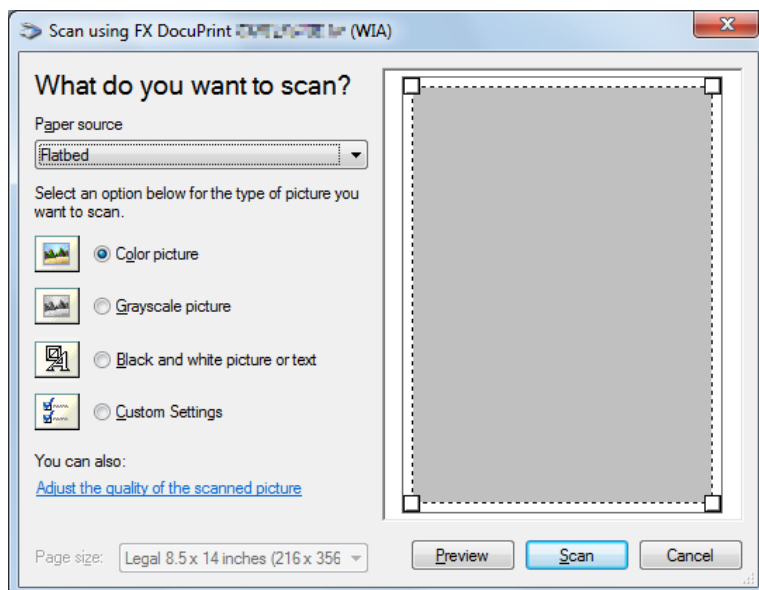
- 2 Start the drawing software, such as Paint for Windows.

NOTE:

- When you use Windows Vista or Windows Server 2008, use Windows Photo Gallery instead of Paint.

- 3 Click the **Paint** button → **From scanner or camera**.

The WIA (Windows Image Acquisition) window appears.

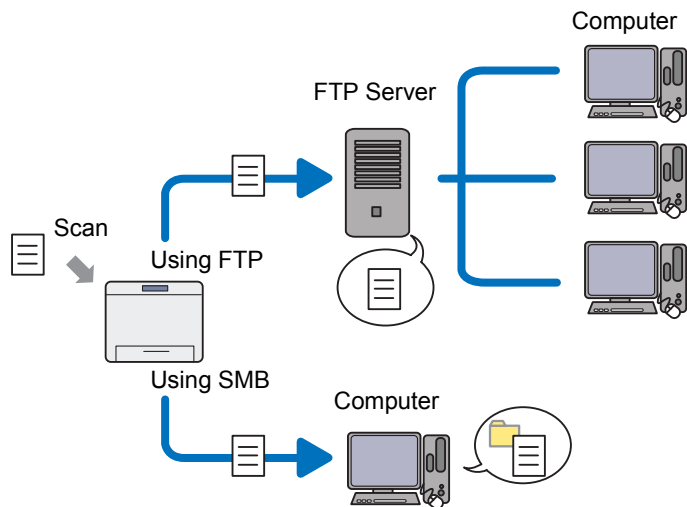


- 4 Select your scanning preferences and click **Adjust the quality of the scanned picture** to display the **Advanced Properties** window.
- 5 Select the desired properties including brightness and contrast, and then click **OK**.
- 6 Click **Scan** to start scanning.
- 7 Click the **Paint** button → **Save as**.
- 8 Enter a picture name, and select a file format and destination to save the picture.

Scanning to a Computer or Server via SMB/FTP

■ Overview

The Scan to Server/Computer feature allows you to scan documents and send the scanned document to a network computer via the FTP or SMB protocol.



You can select the kind of the server and specify a destination to store the scanned document with the CentreWare Internet Services or the Address Book Editor.

The following items are required to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature.

- Using SMB

To transfer data via SMB, your computer must run on one of the following operating systems that includes folder sharing.

For Mac OS X, a shared user account is required on the Mac OS X.

- Windows Server 2003
- Windows Server 2008
- Windows Server 2008 R2
- Windows Server 2012
- Windows Server 2012 R2
- Windows Vista
- Windows 7
- Windows 8
- Windows 8.1
- Mac OS X 10.5
- Mac OS X 10.6
- Mac OS X 10.7
- OS X 10.8
- OS X 10.9

- Using FTP

To transfer data via FTP, one of the following FTP servers and an account to the FTP server (login name and password) are required.

- Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2008 R2
FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 6.0
- Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012
FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 8.0
- Windows 8.1 and Windows Server 2012 R2
FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 8.5
- Mac OS X 10.5, Mac OS X 10.6, Mac OS X 10.7, OS X 10.8, and OS X 10.9
FTP service of Mac OS X

For information on how to configure the FTP service, contact your system administrator.

Follow the procedure below to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature.

"Confirming a Login Name and Password" on page 146



"Specifying a Destination to Store the Document" on page 148



"Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 156



"Sending the Scanned File to the Network" on page 162

■ Confirming a Login Name and Password

When Using SMB

The Scan to Computer/Server feature requires a user login account with a valid and non-empty password for authentication. Confirm a login user name and password.



If you do not use a password for your user login, you need to create a password for your user login account with the following procedure.

- **For Windows Server 2003:**

- 1 Click **Start** → **Administrative Tools** → **Computer Management**.
- 2 Click **Local Users and Groups**.
- 3 Double-click **Users**.
- 4 Right-click your account, and then select **Set Password**.

NOTE:

- When an alert message appears, confirm the message and then click **Proceed**.

- 5 Add in a password for your user login account.

- **For Windows Vista and Windows 7:**

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
- 2 Click **User Accounts and Family Safety**.
- 3 Click **User Accounts**.
- 4 Click **Create a password for your account** and add in a password for your user login account.

- **For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 R2:**

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
- 2 Click **User Accounts**.
- 3 Click **User Accounts**.
- 4 Click **Create a password** for your account and add in a password for your user login account.

- **For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012:**

- 1 Place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings** → **Change PC settings**.
- 2 Click **Users**.
- 3 Click **Create a password** and add in a password for your user login account.

- **For Windows 8.1 and Windows Server 2012 R2:**

- 1 Place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings** → **Change PC settings**.
- 2 Click **Accounts** → **Sign-in options**.
- 3 Click **Add** under **Password**, and add in a password for your user login account.

- **For Mac OS X 10.5 and Mac OS X 10.6:**

- 1 Click **System Preferences** → **Accounts**.
- 2 Select your account.
- 3 Select **Change Password**.
- 4 Enter a password for your user login account in **New Password** (**New password** for Mac OS X 10.6).
- 5 Re-enter the password in **Verify**.
- 6 Click **Change Password**.

- **For Mac OS X 10.7, OS X 10.8, and OS X 10.9:**

- 1 Click **System Preferences** → **Users & Groups**.
- 2 Select your account.
- 3 Select **Change Password**.
- 4 Enter a password for your user login account in **New password**.
- 5 Re-enter the password in **Verify**.
- 6 Click **Change Password**.

After you confirmed a login user name and password, see "Specifying a Destination to Store the Document" on page 148.

When Using FTP

The Scan to Computer/Server feature requires a user name and a password. For your user name and password, contact your system administrator.

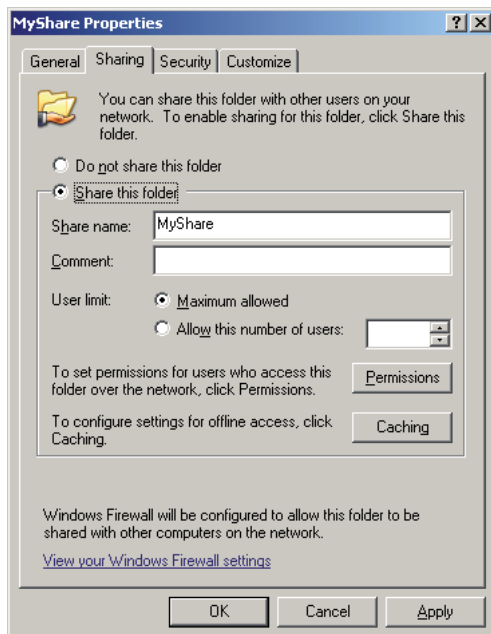
■ Specifying a Destination to Store the Document

When Using SMB

Share a folder to store the scanned document using the following procedure.

- **For Windows Server 2003:**

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, **MyShare**).
- 2 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.
- 3 Click the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder**.

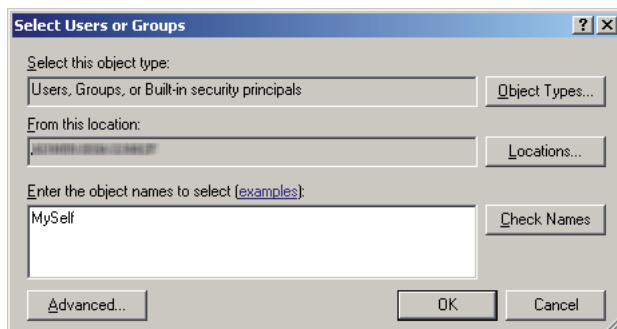


- 4 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

NOTE:

- Note down the shared name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.

- 5 Click **Permissions** to give write permission for this folder.
- 6 Click **Add**.
- 7 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, **MySelf**).

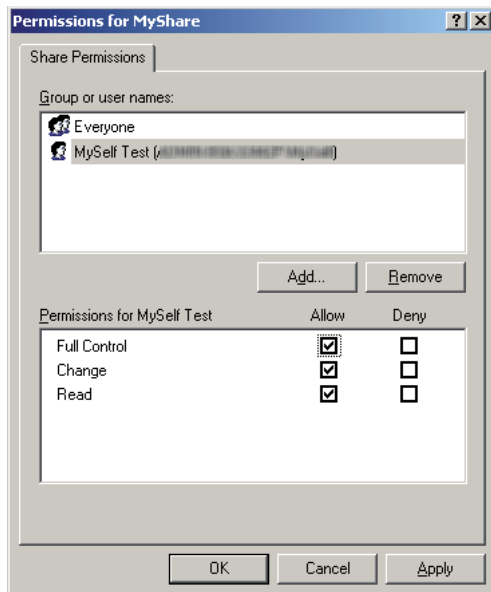


- 8 Click **OK**.

- 9 Click the user login name that you have just entered. Select the **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document to this folder.

NOTE:

- Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.



- 10 Click **OK**.
- 11 Configure other settings as necessary, and then click **Apply** and click **OK**.

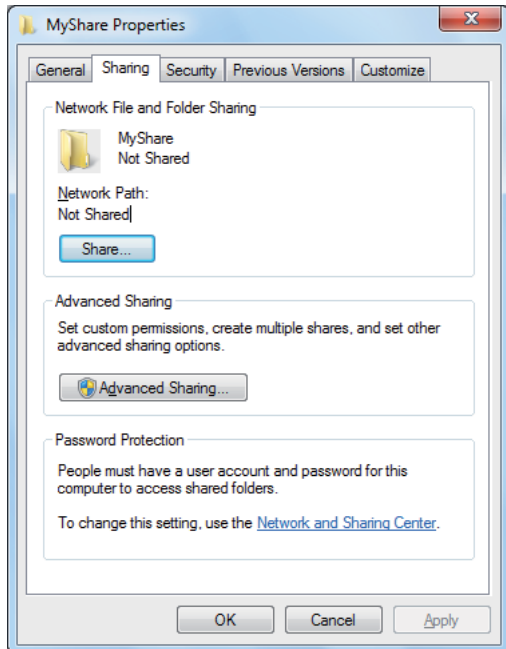
NOTE:

- To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
Example: Folder name: **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John**
You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory.

After you created a folder, see "Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 156.

- **For Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2008 R2:**

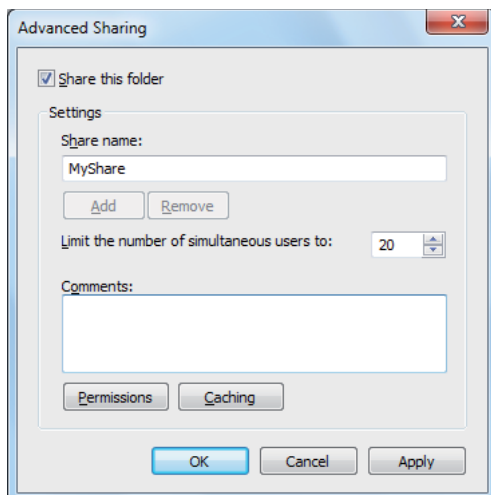
- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, **MyShare**).
- 2 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.
- 3 Click the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Advanced Sharing**.
For Windows Vista, when **User Account Control** window appears, click **Continue**.



- 4 Select the **Share this folder** check box.
- 5 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

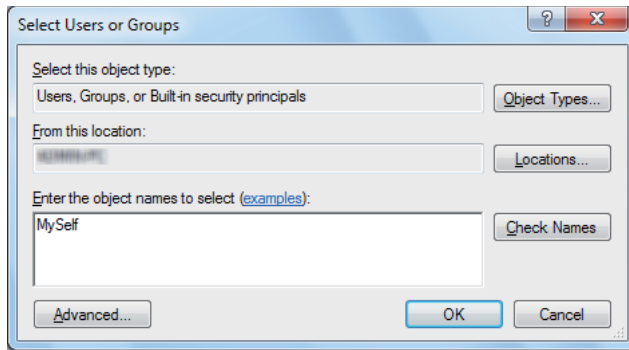
NOTE:

- Note down the shared name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.



- 6 Click **Permissions** to give write permission for this folder.
- 7 Click **Add**.

- 8 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, **MySelf**).

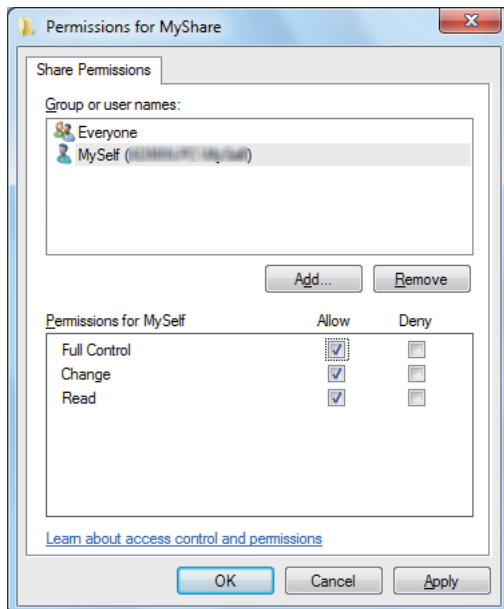


- 9 Click **OK**.

- 10 Click the user login name that you have just entered. Select the **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document to this folder.

NOTE:

- Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.



- 11 Click **OK**.

- 12 Click **OK** to exit the **Advanced Sharing** window.

- 13 Click **Close**.

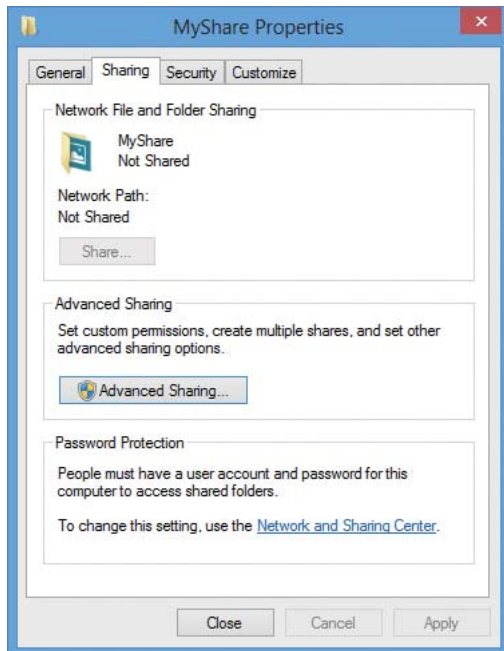
NOTE:

- To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
Example: Folder name: **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John**
You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory.

After you created a folder, see "Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 156.

- **For Windows 8, Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2012, and Windows Server 2012 R2:**

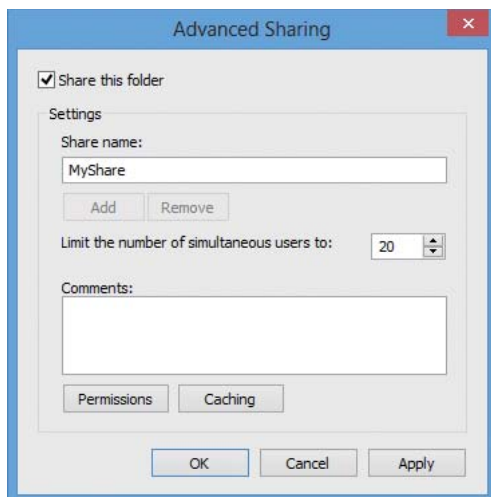
- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name: **MyShare**).
- 2 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.
- 3 Click the **Sharing** tab, and then click **Advanced Sharing**.



- 4 Select the **Share this folder** check box.
- 5 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

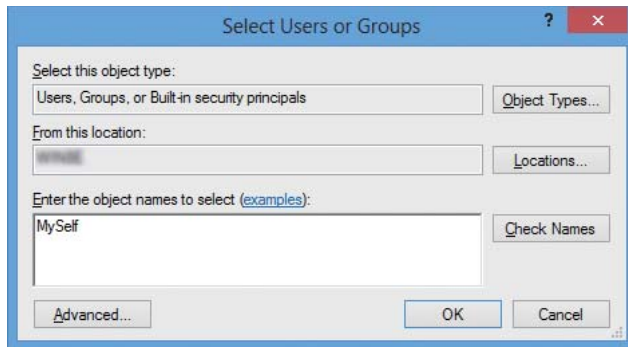
NOTE:

- Note down the shared name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.



- 6 Click **Permissions** to create a write permission for this folder.
- 7 Click **Add**.

- 8 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name: **MySelf**).

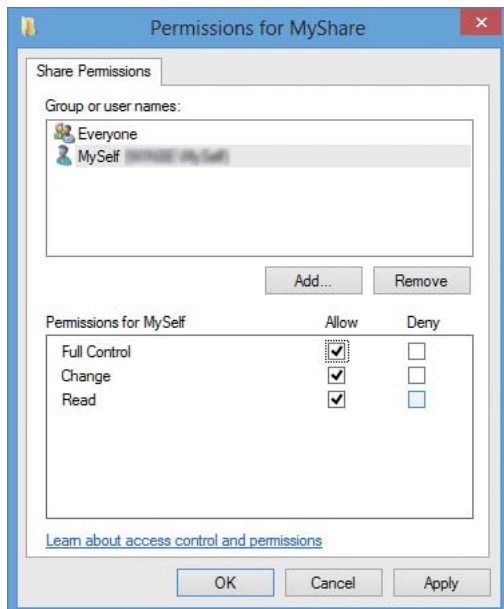


- 9 Click **OK**.

- 10 Click the user login name that you have just entered. Select the **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document into this folder.

NOTE:

- Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.



- 11 Click **OK**.
- 12 Click **OK** to exit the **Advanced Sharing** dialog box.
- 13 Click **Close**.

NOTE:

- To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
Example: Folder name: **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John**
You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory.

After you created a folder, see "Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 156.

- **For Mac OS X 10.5 and Mac OS X 10.6:**

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, **MyShare**).

NOTE:

- Note down the folder name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.

- 2 Select the created folder, and then select **Get Info** from the **File** menu.
- 3 Select the **Shared Folder** (**Shared folder** for Mac OS X 10.6) check box, and then close the window.
- 4 Open **System Preferences**, and then click **Sharing**.
- 5 Select the **File Sharing** check box, and then click **Options**.
- 6 Select the **Share files and folders using SMB** (**Share files and folders using SMB (Windows)** for Mac OS X 10.6) check box and your account name.
- 7 Enter your account password, and then click **OK**.
- 8 Click **Done**.

- **For Mac OS X 10.7, OS X 10.8, and OS X 10.9:**

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, **MyShare**).

NOTE:

- Note down the folder name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.

- 2 Select the created folder, and then select **Get Info** from the **File** menu.
- 3 Select the **Shared folder** check box, and then close the window.
- 4 Open **System Preferences**, and then click **Sharing**.
- 5 Select the **File Sharing** check box, and then click **Options**.
- 6 Select the **Share files and folders using SMB** check box and your account name.
- 7 Enter your account password, and then click **OK**.
- 8 Click **Done**.

When Using FTP

For a destination to store the document, contact your system administrator.

■ Configuring the Printer Settings

You can configure the printer settings to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature with the CentreWare Internet Services or Address Book Editor.

From the CentreWare Internet Services

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.
The printer's web page appears.

NOTE:

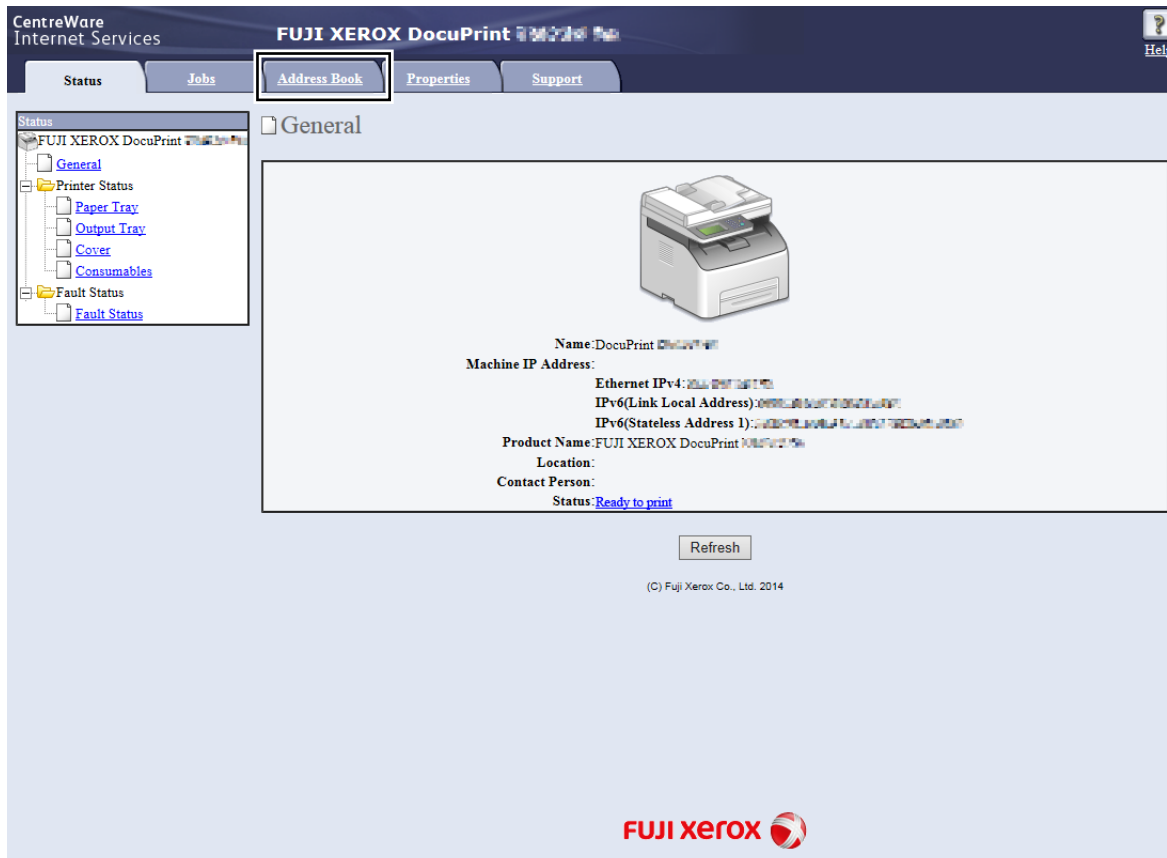
- For details on how to check the IP address of the printer, see "Verifying the IP Settings" on page 59.

- 3 Click the **Address Book** tab.

If user name and password are required, enter the correct user name and password.

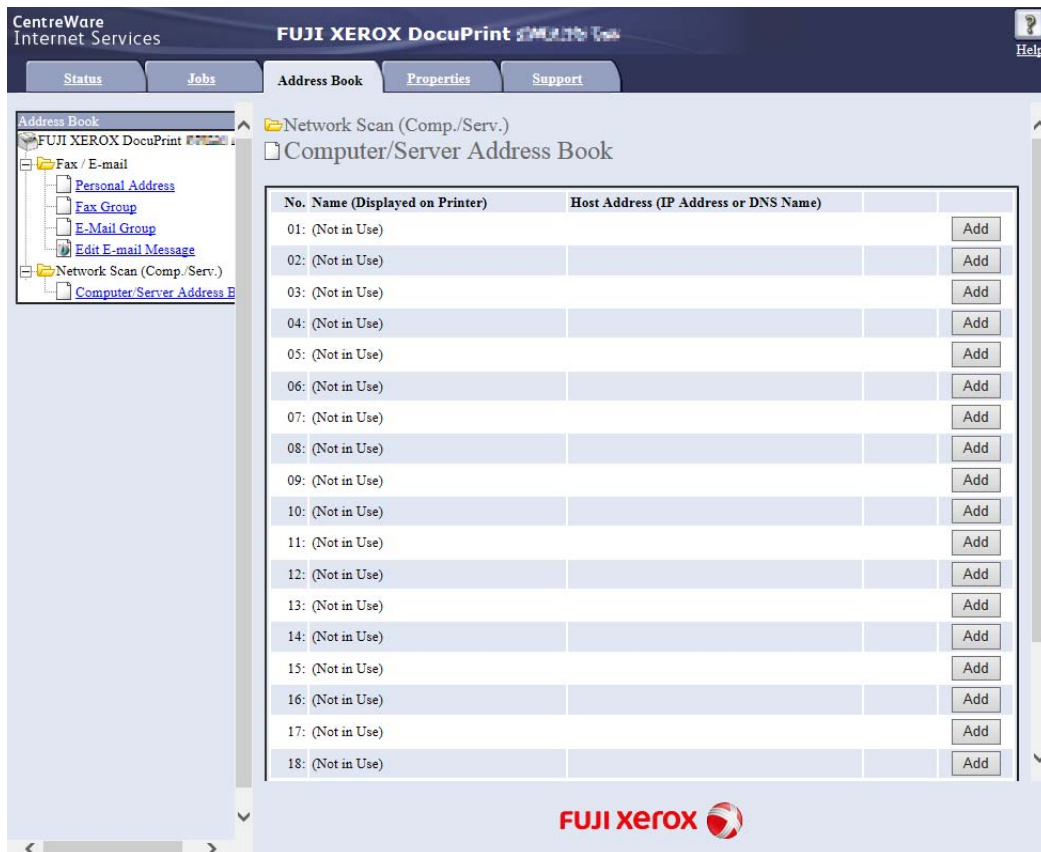
NOTE:

- The default User ID and password are **11111** and **x-admin** respectively.



- 4 Click **Computer/Server Address Book** under **Network Scan (Comp./Serv.)**.

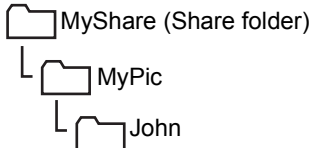
5 Select any unused number and click **Add**.



The **Add Network Scan Address** page appears.

No.	01
1 Name (Displayed on Printer)	
2 Network Type	* Computer SMB ▼
3 Host Address (IP Address or DNS Name)	
4 Port Number	FTP(21, 5000 - 65535), SMB(139, 5000 - 65535)
5 Login Name (if required by host)	
6 Login Password	
7 Re-enter Password	
8 Name of Shared Directory	 e.g. SMB(Share, Sharedfolder)
9 Subdirectory Path (optional)	

6 To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

1	Name (Displayed on Printer)	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the Address Book.
2	Network Type	Select Server FTP if you use a FTP server. Select Computer SMB if you store the document in a shared folder of your computer.
3	Host Address (IP Address or DNS Name)	Enter a server name or IP address of your computer or the FTP server that you have shared out. The following are examples: • For Server FTP: Server name: myhost.example.com (myhost: host name, example.com: domain name) IP address: 192.0.2.0 • For Computer SMB: Server name: myhost IP address: 192.0.2.0
4	Port Number	Enter the server port number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 21 for FTP and 139 for SMB.
5	Login Name (if required by host)	Enter the user account name that has access to the shared folder on your computer or FTP server.
6	Login Password	Enter the password corresponding to the above login name. NOTE: • Empty password is not valid in the Scan to Computer feature. Make sure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Confirming a Login Name and Password" on page 146 for details on how to add a password in your user login account.)
7	Re-enter Password	Re-enter your password.
8	Name of Shared Directory	For Computer SMB only. On the Windows operating system, enter the share name of the folder to store the scanned document on the recipient computer. On the Mac OS X, enter the folder name to store the scanned document on the recipient computer.
9	Subdirectory Path (optional)	For Computer SMB To store the scanned document in the share folder directly without creating any subfolder, leave the space blank. To store the scanned document in the folder you created under the share folder, enter the path as following. Example: Share Folder name: MyShare , Second-level folder name: MyPic , Third-level folder name: John You should now see MyShare\MyPic\John in your directory.  <pre> graph TD MS[MyShare (Share folder)] --> MP[MyPic] MP --> J[John] </pre> In this case, enter the following item. Server Path: \\MyPic\John For Server FTP Enter the server path to store the scanned document.

7 Click **Apply**.

After you configured settings, see "Sending the Scanned File to the Network" on page 162.

From the Address Book Editor

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

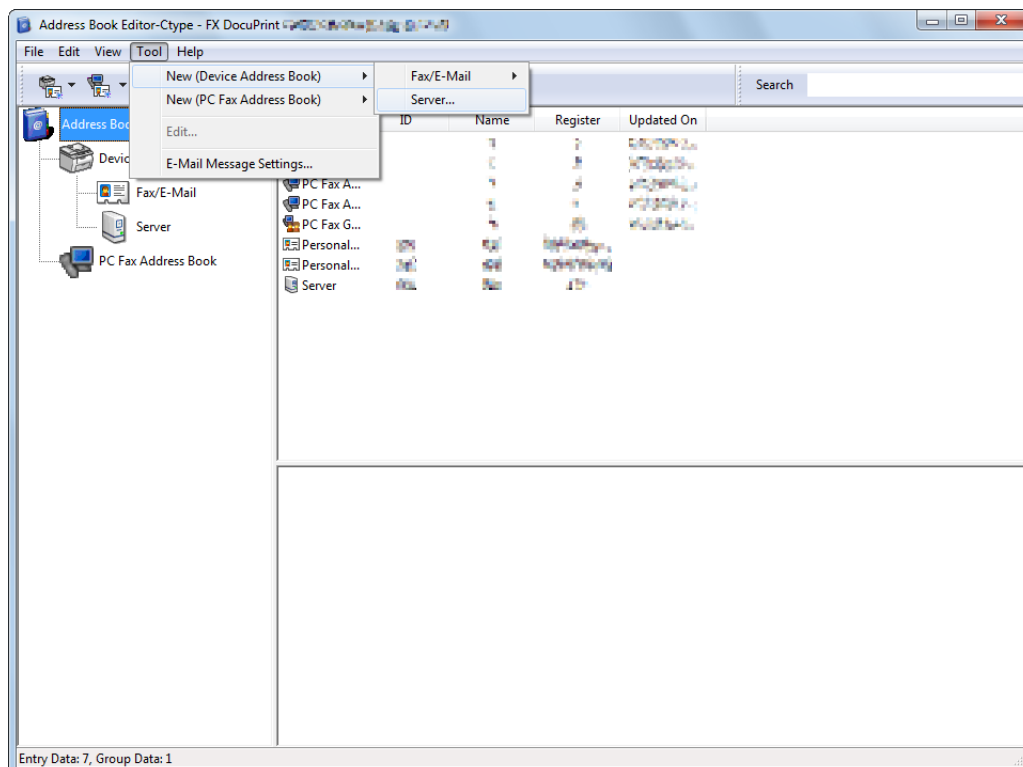
- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Address Book Editor**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Device Name**.
- The **Enter Password** window appears when **Panel Lock Set** is set to **Enable**. In this case, enter the password you specified, and click **OK**.

- 2 Click **OK** on the "Retrieval Successful" message window.

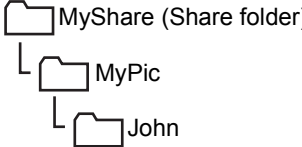
- 3 Click **Tool** → **New (Device Address Book)** → **Server**.



The **Server Address** window appears.

4 To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

1	Name	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the Address Book.
2	Server Type	Select Computer if you store the document in a shared folder of your computer. Select Server if you use a FTP server.
3	Computer Settings wizard	For Computer only. Clicking this button opens the wizard screen which guides you through several steps. When you complete the steps in the wizard, the settings for Server Address are automatically configured. For details, click Help .
4	Server Name / IP Address	Enter a server name or IP address of your computer or the FTP server that you have shared out. The following are examples: - For Computer: Server name: myhost IP address: 192.0.2.0 - For Server: Server name: myhost.example.com (myhost: host name, example.com: domain name) IP address: 192.0.2.0
5	Share Name	For Computer only. Enter the name of the shared folder on the recipient computer.

6	Path	For Computer To store the scanned document in the share folder directly without creating any subfolder, leave the space blank. To store the scanned document in the folder you created under the share folder, enter the path as following. Example: Share Folder name: MyShare, Second-level folder name: MyPic, Third-level folder name: John You should now see MyShare\MyPic\John in your directory.  <pre> graph TD A[MyShare (Share folder)] --> B[MyPic] B --> C[John] </pre> In this case, enter the following item. Path: MyPic\John For Server Enter the path to store the scanned document.
7	Login Name	Enter the user account name that has access to the shared folder on your computer or FTP server.
8	Login Password	Enter the password corresponding to the above login name. NOTE: Empty password is not valid in the Scan to Server/Computer feature. Make sure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Confirming a Login Name and Password" on page 146 for details on how to add a password in your user login account).
9	Confirm Login Password	Re-enter your password.
10	Port Number	Enter the port number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 139 for SMB and 21 for FTP.

5 Click **OK**.

6 Click the **Save All** icon on the toolbar.

After you configured settings, see "Sending the Scanned File to the Network" on page 162.

■ Sending the Scanned File to the Network

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass.

See also:

- "Making Copies From the ADF" on page 130
- "Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 128

- 2 Press the  (**Services Home**) button.
- 3 Select `Scan To`.
- 4 Select `Network`.
- 5 Select  until the desired address appears and then select that address.
- 6 Select `OK`.
- 7 Select scanning options as required.
For details, see "Scan Defaults" on page 244.
- 8 Press the  (**Start**) button to send the scanned files.

When you are using the document glass, the display prompts you for another page. Select `Scan Another Page` or `Done`. `Upload Now`.

If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then select `Scan Another Page`.

Scanning to a USB Storage Device

The Scan To USB feature allows you to scan documents and save the scanned data to a USB storage device. To scan documents and save them, follow the steps below:

- 1 Load the top edge of document(s) first with facing up into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

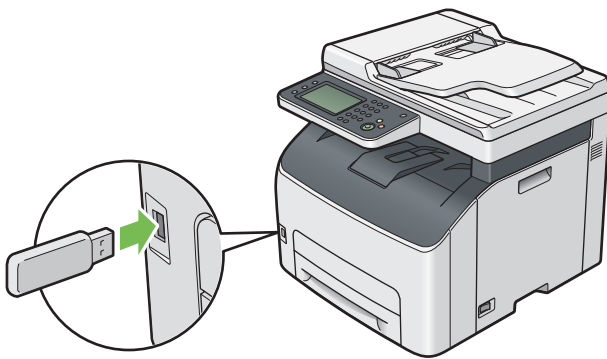
See also:

- "Making Copies From the ADF" on page 130
- "Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 128

- 2 Press the  (**Services Home**) button.
- 3 Insert the USB storage device into the USB drive of the printer.

NOTE:

- If the `USB Drive Detected` menu appears, select `Scan To USB`, and proceed to step 6.



- 4 Select `Scan To`.
- 5 Select `USB Memory`.
- 6 Select scanning options as required. For details, see "Scan Defaults" on page 244.
You can also specify the folder to save the scanned image. For details, see "Specifying a Folder to Save the Scanned Image" on page 164.

- 7 Press the  (**Start**) button.

When you are using the document glass, the display prompts you for another page. Select `Scan Another Page` or `Done`. Save Now.

If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then select `Scan Another Page`.

- 8 Remove the USB storage device from the printer.

IMPORTANT:

- Before removing the USB storage device, ensure that the printer is not accessing the USB storage device. If you remove the USB storage device while the printer is accessing, the data in the USB storage device or the USB storage device itself may be damaged.

■ Specifying a Folder to Save the Scanned Image

To save the scanned image to a folder in the USB storage device, specify the folder before executing the scan job.

- 1 Select **Change Folder** on the **Scan To USB** tab.
- 2 Select a folder to save the scanned image.

NOTE:

- The default saving location is the root directory of the USB storage device.
- You cannot directly enter a folder path using the number pad.
- You can select any folder in the USB storage device but cannot create a new folder in this step. You should always create a new folder before connecting the storage device to the printer.

If you want the printer to automatically create a folder and then save the scanned image to that folder, set **Create Folder** to **On**. For details, see "Create Folder" on page 247.

If the name of the scanned image has already existed in the folder, the printer automatically generates a new file name to save the data.

Sending an E-mail With the Scanned Image

To send an e-mail attached with the scanned image from your printer, follow the steps below:

- Set up your SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) server information. SMTP is a protocol for sending e-mail. Refer to the Setup Guide for more details.
- Set up the E-mail Address Book through the CentreWare Internet Services. For details, see "Setting an E-mail Address Book" on page 165.

■ Setting an E-mail Address Book

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.
The printer's web page appears.

NOTE:

- For details on how to check the IP address of the printer, see "Verifying the IP Settings" on page 59.

- 3 Click the **Address Book** tab.

If user name and password are required, enter the correct user name and password.

NOTE:

- The default User ID and password are **11111** and **x-admin** respectively.

- 4 Click **Personal Address** under **Fax / E-mail**.

The screenshot shows the 'CentreWare Internet Services' web interface for a 'FUJI XEROX DocuPrint' printer. The 'Address Book' tab is selected, and the 'Personal Address' section is active. A table lists 18 entries, all marked '(Not in Use)', with an 'Add' button for each. The left sidebar shows a tree view with 'Fax / E-mail' expanded, and 'Personal Address' selected. The bottom of the page features the 'FUJI xerox' logo.

No.	Name	Phone Number	Address	
001:	(Not in Use)			Add
002:	(Not in Use)			Add
003:	(Not in Use)			Add
004:	(Not in Use)			Add
005:	(Not in Use)			Add
006:	(Not in Use)			Add
007:	(Not in Use)			Add
008:	(Not in Use)			Add
009:	(Not in Use)			Add
010:	(Not in Use)			Add
011:	(Not in Use)			Add
012:	(Not in Use)			Add
013:	(Not in Use)			Add
014:	(Not in Use)			Add
015:	(Not in Use)			Add
016:	(Not in Use)			Add
017:	(Not in Use)			Add
018:	(Not in Use)			Add

- 5 Select any unused number and click **Add**.
The **Add Personal Address** page appears.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Personal Address' page within the CentreWare Internet Services interface. The page has a dark blue header with 'CentreWare Internet Services' and 'FUJI XEROX DocuPrint' logos. Below the header are tabs for 'Status', 'Jobs', 'Address Book', 'Properties', and 'Support'. The 'Address Book' tab is selected. On the left, a tree view shows the 'Address Book' structure with 'Fax / E-mail' expanded, showing 'Personal Address', 'Fax Group', 'E-Mail Group', 'Edit E-mail Message', 'Network Scan (Comp. Serv.)', and 'Computer Server Address B'. The main content area is titled 'Add Personal Address' and contains a form with the following fields: 'No.' (with value '001'), 'Name' (text input), 'Phone Number' (text input), and 'E-mail Address' (text input). Below the form are 'Apply', 'Undo', and 'Back' buttons. The Fuji Xerox logo is at the bottom right.

- 6 Enter a name in the **Name** field and an e-mail address in the **E-mail Address** field.
7 Click **Apply**.

■ Sending an E-mail With the Scanned File

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass.

See also:

- "Making Copies From the ADF" on page 130
- "Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 128

- 2 Press the  (**Services Home**) button.

- 3 Select **E-mail**.

- 4 Specify a recipient from the following, and then select **OK**.

New Recipient: Enter an e-mail address directly.

Address Book: Select from the following types of address books.

- **Device Address Book - Individuals:** Select the e-mail address registered in the address book.
- **Device Address Book - Groups:** Select the e-mail group registered in the address book.
- **Search Network Address Book:** Search the e-mail address from the LDAP server address book.

Select the recipient you specified by **New Recipient** to remove or edit the recipient.

Select the recipient you specified from **Address Book** to remove or see details of the recipient. You can also change the e-mail to **Bcc**.

NOTE:

- Users need to be registered in the E-mail address book before you can select **Address Book** on the operator panel.
- For more information on address book and server address book, see "Address Book Editor" on page 42.
- If you are using the LDAP server address book, **Email Server Address Book** must be set to **On**. For details, see "E-mail Server Address Book" on page 230.

- 5 Select scanning options as required. For details, see "Scan Defaults" on page 244.

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to send e-mail.

When you are using the document glass, the display prompts you for another page. Select **Scan Another Page** or **Done**. Send **Now**.

If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then select **Scan Another Page**.

Adjusting Scanning Options

■ Adjusting the Default Scan Settings

For a complete list of all of the defaults settings, see "Defaults Settings" on page 239.

Setting the Scanned Image File Type

To specify the file type of the scanned image:

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Default Settings**.
- 3 Select **Scan Defaults**.
- 4 Select **File Format**.
- 5 Select the type, and then select **OK**.

Available types:

- **PDF (factory default)**
- **Multi-Page TIFF**
- **TIFF**
- **JPEG**

Setting the Color Mode

You can scan an image in color or in black and white. Selecting black and white significantly reduces the file size of the scanned images. An image scanned in color will have a larger file size than the same image scanned in black and white.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Default Settings**.
- 3 Select **Scan Defaults**.
- 4 Select **Output Color**.
- 5 Change the color setting to **Color**, **Black & White** or **Gray Scale**, and then select **OK**.

NOTE:

- The **Black & White** mode is available only when **File Format** is set to **PDF** or **TIFF**.

Setting the Scan Resolution

You may want to change the scan resolution depending on the way you plan to use the scanned image. Scan resolution affects both the size and image quality of the scanned image file. The higher the scan resolution, the larger the file size.

To select the scan resolution:

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Default Settings**.
- 3 Select **Scan Defaults**.
- 4 Select **Resolution**.
- 5 Select one of the following options, and then select **OK**:
 - **200dpi**: Produces the lowest resolution and smallest file size. (factory default)
 - **300dpi**: Produces medium resolution and a medium file size.
 - **400dpi**: Produces high resolution and a large file size.
 - **600dpi**: Produces the highest resolution and largest file size.

Setting the Original Size

To specify the size of the original:

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Default Settings**.
- 3 Select **Scan Defaults**.
- 4 Select **Original Size**, and then select **OK**.
- 5 Select a specific paper size to determine the area to be scanned, and then select **OK**.
The factory default setting is A4 (210 × 297mm).

Automatically Suppressing Background Variations

When scanning document has light gray background such as newspapers, the printer automatically can detect the background and whiten it when outputting the image.

To turn on/off automatic suppression:

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Default Settings**.
- 3 Select **Scan Defaults**.
- 4 Select **Auto Background Suppression**.
- 5 Select either **On** or **Off**, and then select **OK**.
The factory default setting is **On**.

■ Changing the Scan Settings Options

Use the scan options to configure a variety of scanner features when scanning to a Network, PC, or USB storage device.

- Scan To Network / Scan To PC / Scan To USB Tab

You can set the basic options of the scan such as Output Color, Resolution, and File Format.

- Quality Tab

You can set the options concerning image quality such as Lighten / Darken, Sharpness and Auto Background Suppression.

- Options Tab

You can set other options for the scan such as Original Size and Edge Erase.

To temporarily change a scan setting when sending a scanned image by e-mail:

- 1 Press the  (**Services Home**) button.
- 2 Select E-mail.
- 3 Select scan options on the Quality and Options tabs.
- 4 Change the selected setting, and then select OK.
- 5 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin the scan.

To temporarily change a scan setting when scanning to a computer:

- 1 Press the  (**Services Home**) button.
- 2 Select Scan To.
- 3 Select the scan destination.
- 4 Select scan options on the Scan To PC, Quality and Options tabs.
- 5 Change the selected setting, and then select OK.
- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin the scan.

Faxing

- "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 172
- "Configuring Fax Initial Settings" on page 174
- "Sending a Fax" on page 176
- "Sending a Delayed Fax" on page 182
- "Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax)" on page 183
- "Receiving a Fax" on page 188
- "Automatic Dialing" on page 191
- "Address Book" on page 195
- "Other Ways to Fax" on page 196
- "Setting Sounds" on page 198
- "Specifying the Fax Settings" on page 199
- "Changing the Default Settings" on page 203
- "Printing a Report" on page 204

Connecting the Telephone Line

IMPORTANT:

- PTC 200 warning

General warning

The grant of a Telepermit for any item of terminal equipment indicates only that Telecom has accepted that the item complies with minimum conditions for connection to its network. It indicates no endorsement of the product by Telecom, nor does it provide any sort of warranty. Above all, it provides no assurance that any item will work correctly in all respects with another item of Telepermitted equipment of a different make or model, nor does it imply that any product is compatible with all of Telecom's network services Warnings taken from Specification text

2.11.1 Compliance testing (6) & (7) (Functional tests)

"This equipment is not capable, under all operating conditions, of correct operation at the higher speeds for which it is designed. Telecom will accept no responsibility should difficulties arise in such circumstances"

4.5.1 Off-hook line impedance

(4) "This equipment does not fully meet Telecom's impedance requirements. Performance limitations may occur when used in conjunction with some parts of the network. Telecom will accept no responsibility should difficulties arise in such circumstances"

4.9.3 Non-voice equipment

(4) "This equipment is not capable, under all operating conditions, of correct at the higher speeds for which it is designed. Telecom will accept no responsibility should difficulties arise in such circumstances"

5.6.1 General requirements (automatic dialling devices)

(3) "This equipment shall not be set up to make automatic calls to the Telecom '111' Emergency Service

5.5.5 User instructions

(4) If a charge for local calls is unacceptable, the 'Dial' button should NOT be used for local calls. Only the 7-digits of the local number should be dialled from your telephone. DO NOT dial the area code digit or the '0' prefix

8.1.7 User Instructions (automatic call set-up)

(b) This equipment shall not be set up to make automatic calls to the Telecom '111' Emergency Service

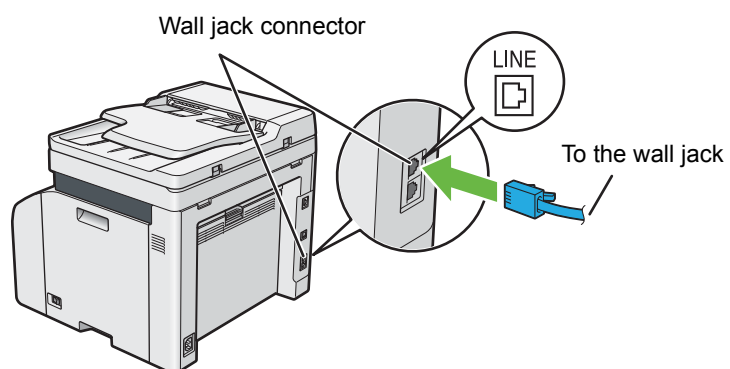
8.2.1(b) Call answering

When this equipment is set up call answering not within 3~30 sets., the telephone or answering machine shall answer incoming call with 3~30sec.

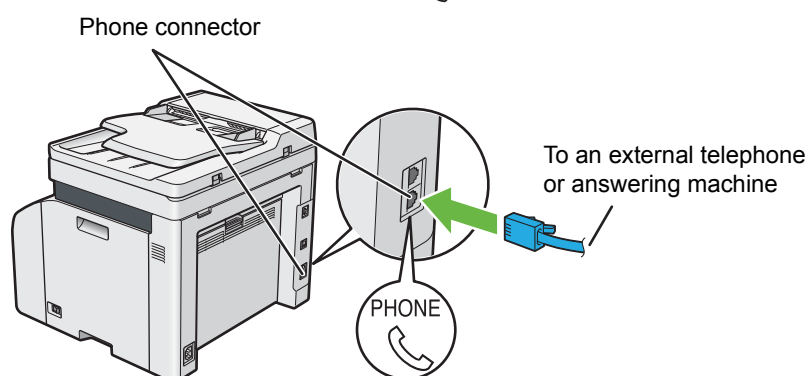
NOTE:

- Do not connect your printer directly to a DSL (digital subscriber line). This may damage the printer. To use a DSL, you will need to use an appropriate DSL filter. Contact your service provider for the DSL filter.

- 1 Plug one end of a telephone line cord to the wall jack connector and the other end to an active wall jack.



- 2 To connect a telephone and/or answering machine to your printer, plug the telephone or answering machine line cord into the phone connector (☎).



Configuring Fax Initial Settings

NOTE:

- The following settings can be configured also using **Fax Setup** on the **FX Printer Installation** screen which is launched from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.

■ Setting Your Region

You need to set the region where your printer is used for using the fax service on the printer.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select **Fax Settings**.
- 4 Select **Fax Line Settings**.
- 5 Select **Region**.
- 6 Select the region where the printer is used, and then select **OK**.
- 7 Select **Yes, Save**.

The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.

NOTE:

- When you configure the region setting, the information, which is registered to the device, is initialized.

■ Setting the Printer ID

You may be required to indicate your fax number on any fax you send. The printer ID, containing your telephone number and name or company name, will be printed at the top of each page sent from your printer.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select **Fax Settings**.
- 4 Select **Fax Line Settings**.
- 5 Select **Fax Number**.
- 6 Enter your fax number using the number pad.

NOTE:

- If you make a mistake while entering numbers, press the **C (Clear)** button to delete the last digit.

- 7 Select **OK** when the number on the display is correct.
- 8 Select **Company Name**.
- 9 Enter your name or company name using the keyboard.
- 10 Select **OK** when the name on the display is correct.

To return to the top level of the System menu, press the  (**Clear All**) button.

■ Setting the Time and Date

NOTE:

- It may be necessary to reset the correct time and date if loss of power to the printer occurs.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select **System Settings**.
- 4 Select **General**.
- 5 Select **Date & Time**.
- 6 Select **Time Zone**.
- 7 Select the desired time zone, and then select **OK**.
- 8 Select **Date**.
- 9 Enter the correct date using the number pad, or select the correct date using the  or  button.

NOTE:

- If you make a mistake while entering numbers, press the **C (Clear)** button to delete the last digit.

- 10 Select **OK** when the date on the display is correct.
- 11 Select **Time**.
- 12 Enter the correct time using the number pad.
- 13 Select **OK** when the time on the display is correct.
To return to the top level of the System menu, press the  (**Clear All**) button.

■ Changing the Clock Mode

You can set the current time using either the 12-hour or the 24-hour format.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select **System Settings**.
- 4 Select **General**.
- 5 Select **Date & Time**.
- 6 Select **Time**.
- 7 Select the desired format, and then select **OK**.
To return to the top level of the System menu, press the  (**Clear All**) button.

Sending a Fax

■ Loading an Original Document on the ADF

IMPORTANT:

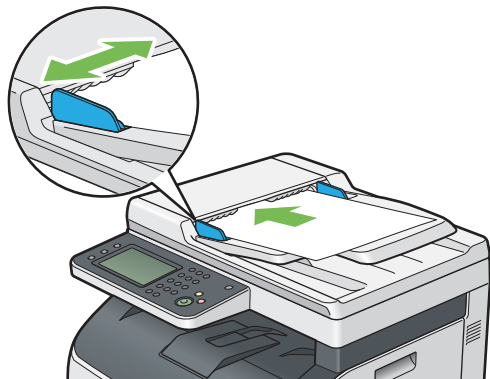
- Do not load more than 15 sheets into the automatic document feeder (ADF) or allow more than 15 sheets to be fed to the document output tray. The document output tray should be emptied before it exceeds 15 sheets or your original documents may be damaged.

NOTE:

- To get the best scan quality, especially for gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the ADF.
- You cannot load the following documents in the ADF. Be sure to place them on the document glass.

 Curled originals	 Pre-punched paper
 Lightweight originals	 Folded, creased or torn originals
 Cut and paste originals	 Carbon paper

- 1 Place the document(s) facing up on the ADF with the top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the correct document size.



- 2 Adjust the document resolution, referring to "Resolution" on page 178.

■ Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass

- 1 Open the document cover.

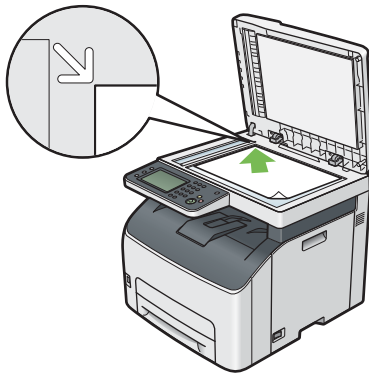


- 2 Place the document facing down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the document glass.



CAUTION:

- Do not apply excessive force to hold thick document on the document glass. It may break the glass and cause injuries.



- 3 Adjust the document resolution, referring to "Resolution" on page 178.
- 4 Close the document cover.

NOTE:

- Make sure that no document is in the ADF. If any document is detected in the ADF, it takes priority over the document on the document glass.
- If you are faxing a page from a book or magazine, lift the document cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the document cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 20 mm, start faxing with the document cover open.

■ Lighten / Darken

To adjust the contrast to make the fax lighter or darker than the original:

- 1 Press the  (**Services Home**) button.
- 2 Select **Fax**.
- 3 Select **Lighten / Darken**.
- 4 Select the desired setting, and then select **OK**.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

Lighten2	Makes the fax lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighten1	
Normal *	Works well with normal typed or printed documents.
Darken1	Makes the fax darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darken2	

■ Resolution

To specify the resolution level to be used for fax transmission:

- 1 Press the  (**Services Home**) button.
- 2 Select **Fax**.
- 3 Select **Resolution**.
- 4 Select the desired setting, and then select **OK**.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

Standard *	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The Super Fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the super fine resolution.
Ultra Fine	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.

NOTE:

- Faxes scanned in the **Super Fine** mode transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

■ Original Type

To select the default document type for the current fax job:

- 1 Press the  (**Services Home**) button.
- 2 Select **Fax**.
- 3 Select **Original Type**.
- 4 Select the desired setting, and then select **OK**.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

Text *	Suitable for documents with text.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

■ Inserting a Pause

For some telephone systems, it is necessary to dial an access code and listen for a second dial tone. A pause must be entered in order for the access code to function. For example, enter the access code 9 and then press the **Redial** / **Pause** button before entering the telephone number. "-" appears on the touch panel to indicate when a pause is entered.

■ Sending a Fax Automatically

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

See also:

- "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 176
- "Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass" on page 177

- 2 Press the  (**Services Home**) button.

- 3 Select **Fax**.

- 4 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax documents.

See also:

- "Resolution" on page 178
- "Inserting a Pause" on page 179

- 5 Select a fax number in one of the following ways:

- Select , and then select one of the following:

Device Address Book - Individuals - Select an individual fax number and then select **OK**.

Device Address Book - Groups - Select a group dial number and then select **OK**.

Search Network Address Book - Search and select a fax number from the LDAP server and then select **OK**.

- Select .

Enter the speed dial number using the number pad, and then select .

NOTE:

- For more information on address book and server address book, see "Address Book" on page 195.
- The fax number needs to be registered before you can select Address Book.

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button.

When the document is placed on the document glass, the display prompts you for another page. If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then select **Scan Another Page**. When you have finished loading documents, select **Done . Fax Now**.

The printer starts dialing the number, and then sending the fax when the remote fax machine is ready.

NOTE:

- Press the  (**Stop**) button to cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax.

■ Sending a Fax Manually

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

See also:

- "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 176
- "Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass" on page 177

- 2 Press the  (**Services Home**) button.

- 3 Select **Fax**.

- 4 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs.

See also:

- "Resolution" on page 178
- "Inserting a Pause" on page 179

- 5 Select **OnHook**, and then select **Manual Send**.

- 6 Enter the remote fax machine's fax number using the number pad.

You can also select the recipient by using speed dial number or address book.

See also:

- "Automatic Redialing" on page 181

NOTE:

- You can enter a fax number using the ten key, *, and #.
- Pressing the **Redial / Pause** button enables you to enter a pause in the fax number.

- 7 Press the  (**Start**) button.

NOTE:

- Press the  (**Stop**) button to cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax.

■ Confirming Transmissions

When the last page of your document has been sent successfully, the printer beeps and returns to the standby mode.

If something goes wrong while sending your fax, an error message appears on the touch panel.

If you receive an error message, select **OK** to clear the message and try to send the document again.

You can set your printer to print a confirmation report automatically after each fax transmission.

See also:

- "Fax Transmit" on page 227
- "Fax Broadcast" on page 227

■ Automatic Redialing

If the number you have dialed is busy or there is no answer when you send a fax, the printer will automatically redial the number every minute based on the number set in the redial settings.

To change the time interval between redials and the number of redial attempts, see "Auto Redial Setup" on page 225.

NOTE:

- The printer will not automatically redial a number that was busy when the number was manually entered.

Sending a Delayed Fax

The **Delayed Send** mode can be used to save scanned documents for transmission at a specified time to take advantage of lower long distance rates.

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

See also:

- "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 176
- "Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass" on page 177

- 2 Press the  (**Services Home**) button.

- 3 Select **Fax**.

- 4 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs.

See also:

- "Resolution" on page 178
- "Inserting a Pause" on page 179

- 5 Select the **Options** tab, and then select **Delayed Send**.

- 6 Select **On**.

- 7 Enter the start time using the number pad, and then select **OK**.

- 8 Select the **Fax** tab.

- 9 Enter the fax number of the recipient using the number pad.

You can also use speed or group dial numbers.

See also:

- "Automatic Dialing" on page 191

- 10 Press the  (**Start**) button.

Once the **Delayed Send** mode is activated, your printer stores all the documents to be faxed to its memory and sends them at the specified time. After faxing in the **Delayed Send** mode is complete, the data in the memory will be cleared.

Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax)

You can send a fax directly from the computer running a Microsoft® Windows® operating system or Mac OS X by using the driver.

NOTE:

- Only black and white faxes can be sent using Direct Fax.
- The IPP protocol is not available for Direct Fax.

■ For Windows

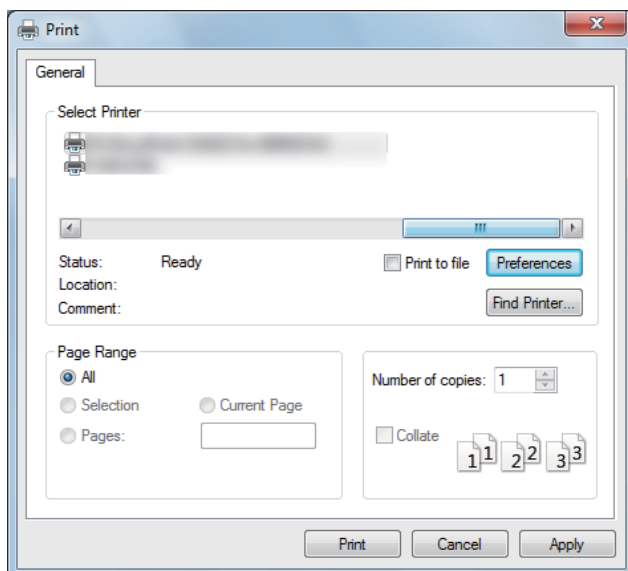
NOTE:

- The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example. The names of the windows and the buttons may be different from those given in the following procedure depending on the OS and application you are using.
- To use this feature, you must install the fax driver.

See also:

- "Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Windows" on page 60

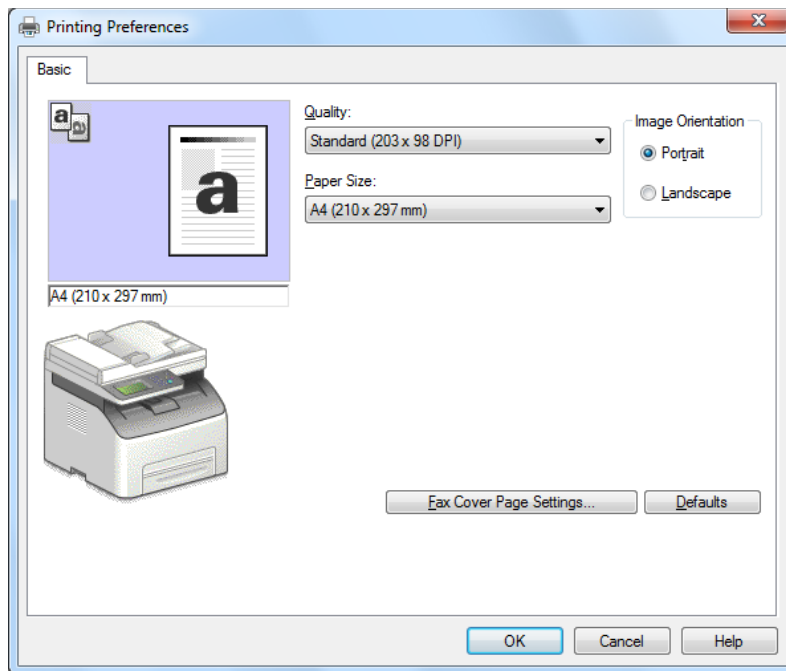
- 1 Open the file you want to send by fax.
- 2 Open the print window from the application, and then select your fax driver.
- 3 Click **Preferences**.



- 4 Specify the fax settings. For more information, click **Help** of the driver.

NOTE:

- The settings performed here are only applied to a single fax job.



- 5 Click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** window.

- 6 Click **Print**.

The **Set / Check Fax Transmission** window appears.

- 7 Specify the destination for the recipient in one of the following ways:
- Enter a name and phone number directly.
 - Select a recipient from the PC Fax Address Book saved on your computer or Device Address Book.
 - Select a recipient from a database other than the PC Fax Address Book or Device Address Book.
- For more information on how to specify the destination, click **Help** to see the Help of the fax driver.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Set / Check Fax Transmission: Untitled - Notepad". The "Recipient Setting" tab is selected. On the left, there are input fields for "Name:", "Phone Number:", and "My Phone Book File:". To the right of these fields are buttons "Add>>" and "Edit<<". Below the "My Phone Book File:" field is a "Browse..." button. Further down are buttons for "Look Up Phone Book..." and "Import And Add file...". A red rectangular box highlights the "Authorization" section, which contains a "Password:" label and an empty text field. To the right of the input fields is a "Recipient List:" table with columns "Phone Number" and "Name". Below the table are "Delete" and "Add to Phone Book" buttons. At the bottom right, there is a "Delayed Send" section with a checkbox labeled "Delayed Send" and time selectors for "Hour:" and "Minute:". At the very bottom of the window are three buttons: "Start Sending" (highlighted in blue), "Stop Sending", and "Help".

NOTE:

- Enter the password in the **Password** field in the **Authorization** area before sending a fax if the Fax service is locked with a password.

- 8 Click **Start Sending**.

■ For Mac OS X

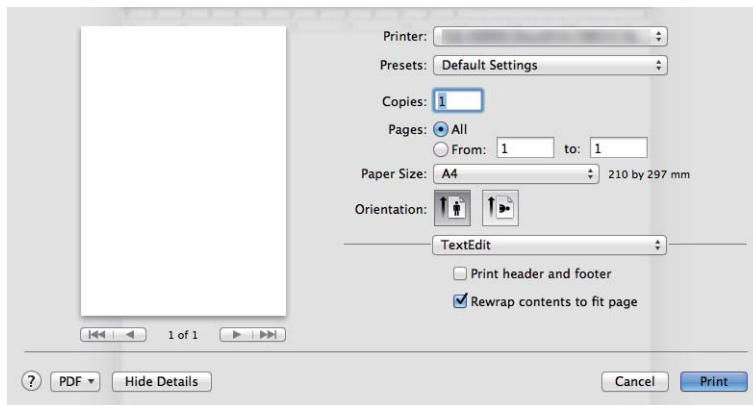
NOTE:

- The following procedure uses OS X 10.9 TextEdit as an example. The names of the windows and the buttons may be different from those given in the following procedure depending on the OS and application you are using.
- To use this feature, you must install the fax driver.

See also:

- "Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Mac OS X" on page 83

- 1 Open the file you want to send by fax.
- 2 Open the print window from the application, and then select your fax driver.



- 3 Specify the fax settings.

NOTE:

- The settings performed here are only applied to a single fax job.

- 4 Click **Print**.

The **Set/Check Fax Transmission** window appears.

5 Specify the destination for the recipient in one of the following ways:

- Specify a recipient directly.
- a** Enter a name and phone number directly.
- b** Click **Add**.

OR

- Select a recipient from the PC Fax Address Book saved on your computer.
- a** Click **Look Up Address Book**.
The **Refer To Address Book** window appears.
- b** On the **Look Up Address Book** tab, select a recipient and then click **Add**.
- c** Click **OK**.

OR

- Select a recipient from the Device Address Book.
- a** Click **Look Up Address Book**.
The **Refer To Address Book** window appears.
- b** On the **Look Up Device Address Book** tab, select a recipient and then click **Add**.
- c** Click **OK**.

The screenshot shows the 'Set/Check Fax Transmission' dialog box. It is divided into several sections. On the left, there are input fields for 'Name' and 'Phone Number', each with an 'Add>>' button to its right. Below these is a 'My Address Book File' section with a '[Browse...]' button and a 'Look Up Address Book...' button. At the bottom left is an 'Authorization' box containing a 'Password' field. On the right, there is a 'Recipient List' table with columns 'Name' and 'Phone Number'. Below the table are 'Delete' and 'Add To Address Book' buttons. Further down is a 'Delayed Send' section with a 'Delayed Send' checkbox and a 'Time' spinner. At the bottom are 'Stop Sending' and 'Start Sending' buttons.

NOTE:

- Enter the password in the **Password** field in the **Authorization** area before sending a fax if the Fax service is locked with a password.

6 Click **Start Sending**.

Receiving a Fax

■ About Receiving Modes

There are five receiving modes; **TEL Mode**, **FAX Mode**, **TEL/FAX Mode**, **Ans/FAX Mode**, and **DRPD Mode**.

NOTE:

- To use **TEL/FAX Mode** or **Ans/FAX Mode**, attach an external telephone or answering machine to the phone connector () on the rear of your printer.

See also:

- "Receiving a Fax Automatically in the FAX Mode" on page 188
- "Receiving a Fax Manually in the TEL Mode" on page 188
- "Receiving a Fax Automatically in the TEL/FAX Mode or Ans/FAX Mode" on page 188
- "Using an Answering Machine" on page 197
- "Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD Mode" on page 189

■ Loading Paper for Receiving Faxes

The instructions for loading paper in the standard 150 sheet tray is the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying, except that faxes can only be printed on letter-, A4-, or legal-size paper.

See also:

- "Loading Print Media in the Standard 150 Sheet Tray" on page 96
- "Setting Paper Sizes and Types" on page 104

■ Receiving a Fax Automatically in the FAX Mode

Your printer is preset to **FAX Mode** at the factory.

If you receive a fax, the printer automatically goes into the fax receive mode after a specified period of time and receives the fax.

To change the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call, see "Auto Answer Setup" on page 223.

■ Receiving a Fax Manually in the TEL Mode

You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone and then pressing the remote receive code (see "Available Fax Setting Options" on page 200), or by selecting **Manual Receive** in **OnHook** (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine) and then pressing the  (**Start**) button.

The printer begins receiving a fax and returns to the standby mode when the reception is completed.

■ Receiving a Fax Automatically in the TEL/FAX Mode or Ans/FAX Mode

To use **TEL/FAX Mode** or **Ans/FAX Mode**, you must attach an external telephone to the phone connector () on the rear of your printer.

In the **TEL/FAX Mode**, if the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in **Auto Answer TEL/FAX**, and then the printer automatically receives a fax.

In the **Ans/FAX Mode**, if the caller leaves a message, the answering machine stores the message as it would normally. If your printer hears a fax tone on the line, it automatically starts to receive a fax.

NOTE:

- If you have set **Auto Answer Fax** and your answering machine is turned off, or no answering machine is connected to your printer, your printer will automatically go into the fax receive mode after a predefined time.

See also:

- "Using an Answering Machine" on page 197

■ Receiving a Fax Manually Using an External Telephone

This feature works best when you are using an external telephone connected to the phone connector () on the rear of your printer. You can receive a fax from someone you are talking to on the external telephone without having to go to the printer.

When you receive a call on the external telephone and hear fax tones, press the two-digit keys on the external telephone.

The printer receives the document.

Press the buttons slowly in sequence. If you still hear the fax tone from the remote machine, try pressing the two-digit keys once again.

`Remote Receive` is set to `Off` at the factory. You can change the two-digit number to whatever you choose. For details on changing the code, see "Remote Receive" on page 225.

NOTE:

- Set the dialing system of your external telephone to DTMF.

■ Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD Mode

The Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) is a telephone company service which enables a user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers. The particular number someone uses to call you on is identified by different ringing patterns, which consist of various combinations of long and short ringing sounds.

Before using the DRPD option, Distinctive Ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. To set up DRPD, you will need another telephone line at your location, or someone available to dial your fax number from outside.

To set up the DRPD:

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.
- 3 Select `Fax Settings`.
- 4 Select `Fax Line Settings`.
- 5 Select `DRPD Pattern`.
- 6 Select the desired pattern, and then select `OK`.
- 7 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on again.

To receive faxes in the DRPD mode, you need to set the menu to `DRPD Mode`. For details, see "Available Fax Setting Options" on page 200.

See also:

- "DRPD Pattern" on page 222

■ Receiving Faxes in the Memory

Since your printer is a multi-tasking device, it can receive faxes while you are making copies or printing. If you receive a fax while you are copying, printing, or run out of paper or toner, your printer stores incoming faxes in the memory. Then, as soon as you finish copying, printing, or re-supply the toner cartridges, the printer automatically prints the fax.

■ Polling Receive

You can receive faxes from the remote fax machine when you want to receive it.

- 1 Press the  (**Services Home**) button.
- 2 Select **Fax**.
- 3 Select the **Options** tab, and then select **Polling Receive**.
- 4 Select **On**, and then select **OK**.
- 5 Enter the number of the remote machine using the number pad.

NOTE:

- For information on how to enter the fax number of the remote machine, see "Sending a Fax Automatically" on page 180 or "Sending a Fax Manually" on page 181.

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button.

Automatic Dialing

■ Speed Dialing

You can store up to 99 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations (01 – 99).

When the speed dial job specified in the delayed fax or redial exists, you cannot change the speed dial number from the operator panel or CentreWare Internet Services.

■ Storing a Number for Speed Dialing

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select **Fax Address Book**.
- 4 Select **Individuals**.
- 5 Select the desired speed dial number between 1 and 200.
- 6 Select the **Name** text box.
- 7 Enter the name, and then select **OK**.
- 8 Select the **Fax Number** text box.
- 9 Enter the number you want to store using the number pad, and then select **OK**.
To insert a pause between numbers, press the **Redial / Pause** button. "-" appears on the LCD panel.
- 10 Select **OK**.
To store more fax numbers, repeat steps 5 to 10.
To return to the top level of the System menu, press the  (**Clear All**) button.

■ Sending a Fax Using a Speed Dial

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

See also:

- "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 176
- "Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass" on page 177

- 2 Press the  (**Services Home**) button.

- 3 Select **Fax** and then select  .

- 4 Enter the speed dial number between 001 and 200 using the number pad, and then select  .

- 5 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs.

See also:

- "Resolution" on page 178
- "Inserting a Pause" on page 179

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button.

The document scans into the memory.

When the document is placed on the document glass, the display prompts you for another page. If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then select **Scan Another Page**. When you have finished loading documents, select **Done. Fax Now.**

The fax number stored in the speed dial location is automatically dialed. The document is sent when the remote fax machine answers.

NOTE:

- Using the asterisk (*) in the first digit, you can send a document to multiple locations. For example, if you enter 00*, you can send a document to the locations registered between 001 and 009.

■ Group Dialing

If you frequently send the same document to several destinations, you can create a group of these destinations. You can create up to six groups. This enables you to use a group dial number setting to send the same document to all the destinations in the group.

NOTE:

- You cannot include one group dial number within another group dial number.

■ Setting Group Dial

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select **Fax Address Book** and then select **Groups**.
- 4 Select the group dial number that you want to edit, and then select **Edit**.
- 5 Select the **Enter Group Name** text box.
- 6 Enter the name, and then select **OK**.
- 7 Select **Add from Address Book**.
- 8 Select the desired speed dial numbers.
- 9 Select **OK**, and then select **OK** again.
To store more group dial numbers, repeat steps 4 to 9.
To return to the top level of the System menu, press the  (**Clear All**) button.

■ Editing Group Dial

You can delete a specific speed dial number from a selected group or add a new number to the selected group.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select **Fax Address Book** and then select **Groups**.
- 4 To change the group dial name:
 - a Select the group dial number that you want to edit, and then select **Edit**.
 - b Select **Enter Group Name** text box.
 - c Enter a new name, and then select **OK** twice.

To delete a speed dial number from the group dial number:

- a Select the group dial number that you want to edit, and then select **Edit**.
- b Select the speed dial number that you want to edit.
- c Select **Remove**.
- d Select **OK**.

To delete the group dial:

- a Select the group dial number.
- b Select **Remove**.
- c Select **Delete**.

NOTE:

- When you delete the last speed dial in a group, the group itself is not deleted.

- 5 If you want to edit another group dial number, repeat step 4.
To return to the top level of the System menu, press the  (**Clear All**) button.

■ Sending a Fax Using Group Dialing (Multi-address Transmission)

You can use group dialing for broadcasting or delayed transmissions.

Follow the procedure of the desired operation (For delayed transmission, see "Sending a Delayed Fax" on page 182).

You can use one or more group numbers in one operation. Then continue the procedure to complete the desired operation.

Your printer automatically scans the document loaded in the ADF or on the document glass into the memory. The printer dials each of the numbers included in the group.

■ Printing a Fax Address Book List

You can check your automatic dial setting by printing a Fax Address Book list.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Report / List`.
- 3 Select `Address Book List`, and then select `Print`.

A list of your Fax Address Book entries is printed.

Address Book

You can select the registered phone numbers from the address books.

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 176 or "Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass" on page 177.

- 2 Press the  (**Services Home**) button.

- 3 Select **Fax**.

- 4 To select the registered phone numbers from the address books:

- a Select **Device Address Book - Individuals** or **Device Address Book - Groups**.
- b Select the desired speed dial number or group dial number.
- c Select **OK**.

NOTE:

- The fax number needs to be registered before you can select address book.

- 5 Press the  (**Start**) button to send the fax.

Other Ways to Fax

■ Using the Secure Receiving Mode

You may need to prevent your received faxes from being accessed by unauthorized people. You can turn on the secure receiving mode using the `Secure Receive` option to restrict printing out all of the received faxes when the printer is unattended. In the secure receiving mode, all incoming faxes will get saved in the memory. When the mode turns off, any faxes stored will be printed.

NOTE:

- Before operation, make sure that `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`.

To turn the secure receiving mode on:

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.
- 3 Select `Fax Settings`.
- 4 Select `Incoming Defaults`.
- 5 Select  until `Secure Receive` appears, and then select `Secure Receive`.
- 6 Select `Secure Receive Set`.
- 7 Select `Enable`, and then select `OK`.
- 8 Enter a four-digit password using the number pad, and then select `OK`.

To return to the top level of the System menu, press the  (**Clear All**) button.

When a fax is received in the secure receiving mode, your printer stores it into memory and the active jobs screen displays `Secure Receive` to let you know that there is a fax stored.

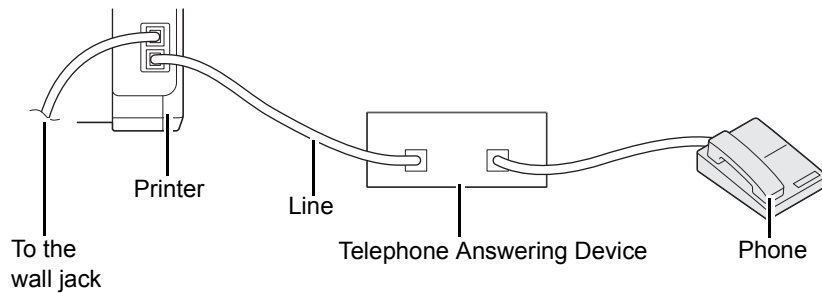
To print received documents:

- 1 Press the  (**Job Status**) button.
 - 2 Select `Secure Fax Receive`.
 - 3 Enter the passcode, and then select `OK`.
- The faxes stored in memory are printed.

To turn the secure receiving mode off:

- 1 Access the `Secure Receive Set` menu by following steps from 1 to 6 in "To turn the secure receiving mode on:" on page 196.
 - 2 Select `Disable`, and then select `OK`.
- To return to the top level of the System menu, press the  (**Clear All**) button.

■ Using an Answering Machine



You can connect a telephone answering device (TAD) directly to the rear of your printer as shown above.

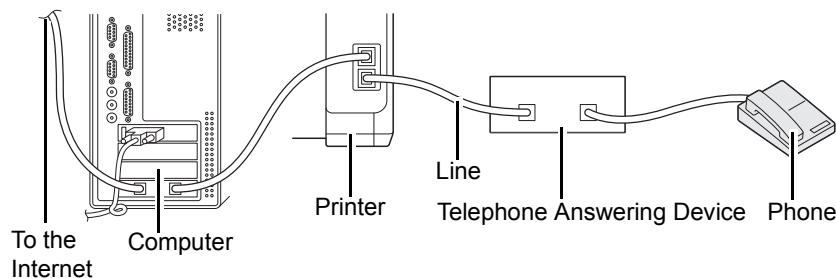
- Set your printer to **Ans/FAX Mode in Receive Mode** and set **Auto Answer Ans/FAX in Auto Answer Setup** to specify the time for the TAD to respond.
- When the TAD picks up the call, the printer monitors and takes the line if fax tones are received and then starts receiving the fax.
- If the answering device is off, the printer automatically goes into the fax receive mode after the ring tone sounds for a predefined time.
- If you answer the call and hear fax tones, the printer will answer the fax call if you

- Select **Manual Receive in OnHook** (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine), and then press the **Start** button and hang up the receiver.

OR

- Press the two-digit remote receive code and hang up the receiver.

■ Using a Computer Modem



If you want to use your computer modem for faxing or for a dial-up Internet connection, connect the computer modem directly to the rear of your printer with the TAD as shown above.

- Set your printer to **Ans/FAX Mode in Receive Mode** and set **Auto Answer Ans/FAX in Auto Answer Setup** to specify the time for the TAD to respond.
- Turn off the computer modem's fax-receive feature.
- Do not use the computer modem if your printer is sending or receiving a fax.
- Follow the instructions provided with your computer modem and fax application to fax via the computer modem.

Setting Sounds

■ Speaker Volume

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select **Fax Settings**.
- 4 Select **Fax Line Settings**.
- 5 Select **Line Monitor**.
- 6 Select the desired volume, and then select **OK**.
- 7 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

■ Ringer Volume

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select **Fax Settings**.
- 4 Select **Incoming Defaults**.
- 5 Select **Ring Tone Volume**.
- 6 Select the desired volume, and then select **OK**.
- 7 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

Specifying the Fax Settings

■ Changing the Fax Settings Options

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Admin Settings**.
- 3 Select **Fax Settings**.
- 4 Select the desired menu item.
- 5 Select the desired setting or enter the value using the number pad.
- 6 Select **OK** to save the selection.
- 7 Confirm that **Settings Become Effective After Restart** appears, and then press any button.
- 8 If necessary, repeat steps 4 to 6.

To return to the top level of the System menu, press the  (**Clear All**) button.

For details on available menu items, see "Available Fax Setting Options" on page 200.

■ Available Fax Setting Options

You can use the following setting options for configuring the fax system:

Option		Description
Fax Number		Specifies the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes. This feature is available when you set <code>Send Header</code> to <code>On</code> . The number specified in <code>Fax Number</code> is used in the printer ID.
Region		You can select the region where the printer is used. You can change this setting when: • No jobs in operation • No fax jobs waiting in the memory
Company Name		Specifies the sender's name to be printed on the header of faxes.
Line Type		You can select the default line type. • PSTN • PBX
Line Monitor		Sets the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
DRPD Pattern		Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
Extel Hook Threshold		You can select the external telephone hook detection threshold for the condition in which a telephone line is not being used.
Receive Mode	TEL Mode	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone and then pressing the remote receive code, or by selecting <code>Manual Receive</code> in <code>OnHook</code> (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine) and then pressing the ◇ (Start) button.
	FAX Mode*	Automatically receives faxes.
	TEL/FAX Mode	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in <code>Auto Answer Setup</code> , and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
	Ans/FAX Mode	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones.
	DRPD Mode	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
Ring Tone Volume		Sets the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when <code>Receive Mode</code> is set to <code>TEL/FAX Mode</code> .
Auto Answer Setup	Auto Answer Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 0 second.
	Auto Answer TEL/FAX	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 6 seconds.
	Auto Answer Ans/Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 21 seconds.
Junk Fax Filter		You can reject faxes sent from unwanted stations. The system only accepts faxes from the remote stations registered in the speed dial. This feature is useful for blocking any unwanted faxes. Select <code>Off</code> to turn the feature off. Anybody can send you a fax. Select <code>On</code> to turn the feature on.

Option		Description
Secure Receive	Secure Receive set	Allows you to password protect all the incoming faxes. When the Secure Receive feature is enabled, the printer stores incoming faxes and prints them when the correct password is entered on the operator panel.
Forward Settings		You can set your printer to forward incoming faxes to another fax number, an e-mail address, or a server. When a fax arrives at your printer, it is stored in the memory. Then, the printer does one of the following: • Dials the fax number you have specified in Forwarding Number • Sends an e-mail to the address you have specified in Forwarding E-mail Address 1-5. The fax is converted to a pdf and is attached to the e-mail • Saves a pdf version of the fax to a shared folder on a server you have specified in Forward to Server Settings Select Off not to forward incoming faxes. Select Forward to forward incoming faxes without printing. If an error occurs during forwarding a received fax, the printer prints the fax. Select Forward and Print to forward and print incoming faxes. Select Forward to E-mail to forward incoming faxes to e-mail. Select E-mail and Print to print incoming faxes and also forward to e-mail. Select Forward to Server to forward incoming faxes to a server. Select Forward to Server and Print to print incoming faxes and also forward to a server. To forward to a fax number, you need to register a fax number on Forwarding Number. To forward to an e-mail address, you need to register information on E-mail and Forwarding E-mail Address. To forward to a server, you need to register the server information on Forward to Server Settings. For information on E-mail and Forwarding E-mail Address, see the Help on CentreWare Internet Services. For information on Forwarding Number, see "Forward Settings" on page 224. For information about shared folders on servers and Forward to Server Settings, see the Help on CentreWare Internet Services.
Remote Receive		You can receive a fax by pressing the remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.
Discard Size		When receiving a document as long as or longer than the paper installed in your printer, you can set the printer to discard any excess at the bottom of the page. If the received page is outside the margin you set, it will print on two sheets of paper at the actual size. When the document is within the margin and Discard Size is set to Auto Reduction , the printer reduces the document to fit it onto the appropriate sized paper and discard does not occur. If Discard Size is set to other than Auto Reduction , the data within the margin will be discarded.
Auto Redial Setup	Number of Redial	You can specify the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy, within the range of 0 to 9. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial.
	Redial Interval	Your printer can automatically redial a remote fax machine if it was busy. Intervals from 1–15 minutes can be entered.
	Interval Timer	You can specify the interval between transmission attempts within the range of 3 to 255 seconds. The default is 8 seconds.
Dial Type		You can select the dialing type. • PB • DP (10PPS) • DP (20PPS)
Prefix Dial		You can specify whether or not to set a prefix dial number.
Fax Cover Page		You can set whether to attach a cover page to faxes when sending faxes.

Option		Description
Send Header		Prints the sender's information on the header of faxes. Select <code>Off</code> to turn this feature off. Select <code>On</code> to turn this feature on. For information on the region setting, see "Setting Your Region" on page 174.
ECM		You can set whether to enable or disable the ECM (Error Correction Mode).
Modem Speed		You can set the modem speed.
Display Manual Fax Recipients		To set whether to display the fax number of the recipient when manually sending a fax.
Fax Reports	Fax Activity	You can set whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
	Fax Transmit	You can set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission.
	Fax Broadcast	You can set whether to print a transmission result after a fax broadcast to multiple locations.

• Prefix Dial

NOTE:

- Prefix Dial only supports the environment where you send a fax to the external line number. To use Prefix Dial, you must do the following from the operator panel.
- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
 - 2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.
 - 3 Select `Fax Settings`.
 - 4 Select `Fax Line Settings`.
 - 5 Select `Line Type`.
 - 6 Select `PBX`.
 - 7 Access the `Fax Settings` menu by following steps from 1 to 3.
 - 8 Select `Transmission Defaults`.
 - 9 Select `Prefix Dial`.
 - 10 Select `On`, and then select `OK`.
 - 11 Enter an up-to-five-digit prefix number from 0 – 9, *, and #, and then select `OK`.
 - 12 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

Changing the Default Settings

The fax menu options can be set to the most frequently used modes.

To create your own default settings:

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab, and then select **Default Settings**.
- 3 Select **Fax Defaults**.
- 4 Select the desired menu item.
- 5 Select the desired setting or enter the value using the number pad, and then select **OK**.

To return to the top level of the System menu, press the  (**Clear All**) button.

Printing a Report

The following reports may be useful when using fax:

- Address Book List
This list shows all the addresses currently stored in the memory of the printer as Address Book information.
- Protocol Monitor
This report shows the status of the protocol when the latest fax was being sent.
- Fax Activity
This report shows information about the faxes you recently received or sent.

To print a report or list:

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Report / List`.
- 3 Select the report or list you want to print, and then select `Print`.
The selected report or list is printed.

Using the Operator Panel Menus and Keypad

- "Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 206
- "Panel Lock Function" on page 250
- "Limiting Access to Printer Operations" on page 252
- "Changing the Language" on page 253
- "Setting the Time for the Power Saver Mode" on page 254
- "About the Concurrent Jobs Feature" on page 255
- "Resetting to Factory Defaults" on page 256
- "Entering Characters" on page 257

Understanding the Printer Menus

This section describes menu options that can be accessed by pressing the  (**System**) button on the operator panel.

NOTE:

- The access to `Admin Settings` and `Report / List` can be limited with a password by enabling the Panel Lock function. For more information, see "Panel Lock Function" on page 250.

■ Report / List

Use `Report / List` to print various types of reports and lists.

NOTE:

- A password is required to enter the `Report / List` menu when `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`. In this case, enter the password you specified, and then select `OK`.

System Settings

Purpose:

To print a list of the information such as the printer name, serial number, and print volume.

Network settings are also printed.

Panel Settings

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of all the settings on the operator panel menus.

PCL Fonts List

Purpose:

To print a sample of the available PCL fonts.

PS Fonts List

Purpose:

To print a sample of the available PS fonts.

Job History

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of the jobs that have been processed. This list contains the last 50 jobs.

Error History

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of paper jams and fatal errors.

Demo Page

Purpose:

To print a test page.

Protocol Monitor

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of monitored protocols.

Address Book List

Purpose:

To print the list of all addresses stored as Address Book information.

Fax Activity

Purpose:

To print the report of faxes you recently received or sent.

Stored Documents

NOTE:

- Stored Documents feature is available only when `RAM Disk` under `System Settings` is set to `On`.

Purpose:

To print a list of all files stored for Secure Print in the RAM disk.

■ Meter Readings

Use `Meter Readings` to check the total number of printed pages.

Values:

<code>Meter1</code>	Displays the total number of color prints.
<code>Meter2</code>	Displays the total number of monochrome prints.
<code>Meter3</code> * ¹	Displays the total number of large size color prints.
<code>Meter4</code>	Displays the total number of color and monochrome prints (<code>Meter1 + Meter2</code>).

*¹ This item always shows 0 on your printer.

■ Wi-Fi Status

Use the `Wi-Fi Status` menu to confirm the connection status of wireless settings. And also configures a wireless connection using `Wi-Fi Setup` or `Wi-Fi Direct Setup`.

■ Admin Settings

Use `Admin Settings` to configure a variety of printer features.

NOTE:

- A password is required to enter `Admin Settings` when `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`. In this case, enter the password you specified, and then select `OK`.

Fax Address Book

Use the `Fax Address Book` menu to configure the individuals and groups settings.

• Individuals

Purpose:

To store up to 99 frequently dialed numbers in Individuals locations.

NOTE:

- The first eight entries are assigned to the one-touch buttons on the operator panel.

See also:

- "Storing a Number for Speed Dialing" on page 191

• Groups

Purpose:

To create a group of fax destinations and register it under a 2-digit dial code. Up to 6 group dial codes can be registered.

See also:

- "Setting Group Dial" on page 193

PCL

Use the **PCL Settings** menu to change printer settings that only affect jobs using the PCL emulation printer language.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• Paper Size

Purpose:

To specify the default paper size.

Values:

mm series

A4* ¹			
A5			
B5			
Letter			
Folio (8.5 × 13")			
Legal			
Executive			
Monarch			
DL Env.			
C5 Env.			
#10 Env.			
Custom Size	Width (x)	210 mm* 77 – 215 mm	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
	Length (y)	297 mm* 127 – 355 mm	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.

*¹ The default for **Paper Size** varies depending on region-specific factory.

inch series

Letter
Folio (8.5 × 13")
Legal
A4* ¹
A5
B5
Executive
Monarch
DL Env.
C5 Env.
#10 Env.

Custom Size	Width (x)	8.3 inch* 3.0 – 8.5 mm	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
	Length (y)	11.7 inch* 5.0 – 14.0 mm	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.

*1 The default for Paper Size varies depending on region-specific factory.

NOTE:

- Selecting Custom Size for the paper size prompts you to enter a custom length and width.

• Orientation

Purpose:

To specify how text and graphics are oriented on the page.

Values:

Portrait*	Prints text and graphics parallel to the short edge of the paper.
Landscape	Prints text and graphics parallel to the long edge of the paper.

• Font

Purpose:

To specify the default font from the fonts registered in the printer.

Values:

Courier*	Arial Bd	N C Schbk BdIt
CG Times	Arial It	Times Roman
CG Times Bd	Arial BdIt	Times Bd
CG Times It	Times New	Times It
CG Times BdIt	Times New Bd	Times BdIt
CG Omega	Times New It	ZapfC MdIt
CG Omega Bd	Times New BdIt	Symbol
CG Omega It	Helvetica	SymbolPS
CG Omega BdIt	Helvetica Bd	Wingdings
Coronet	Helvetica Ob	ZapfDinbats
Clarendon Cd	Helvetica BdOb	Courier Bd
Univers Md	HelveticaNr	Courier It
Univers Bd	HelveticaNr Bd	Courier BdIt
Univers MdIt	HelveticaNr Ob	LetterGothic
Univers BdIt	HelveticaNrBdOb	LetterGothic Bd
Univers MdCd	Palatino Roman	LetterGothic It
Univers BdCd	Palatino Bd	CourierPS
Univers MdCdIt	Palatino It	CourierPS Bd
Univers BdCdIt	Palatino BdIt	CourierPS Ob
AntiqueOlv	ITC A G Go Bk	CourierPS BdOb
AntiqueOlv Bd	ITC A G Go Dm	Line Printer
AntiqueOlv It	ITC A G Go BkOb	
GaramondAntiqua	ITC A G Go DmOb	
Garamond Hlb	ITCBookman Lt	
Garamond Krsv	ITCBookmanDm	
GaramondKrsvHlb	ITCBookman LtIt	
Marigold	ITCBookmanDm It	
Albertus Md	N C Schbk Roman	
Albertus XBd	N C Schbk Bd	
Arial	N C Schbk It	

• Symbol Set

Purpose:

To specify a symbol set for a specified font.

Values:

ROMAN-8	MS PUB	DNGBTSMS
ROMANEXT	MATH-8	ISO L6
ISO L1	PS MATH	PC-1004
ISO L2	PI FONT	PC-775
ISO L5	LEGAL	WINBALT
PC-8*	ISO-4	UCS-2
PC-8 DN	ISO-6	
PC-850	ISO-11	
PC-852	ISO-15	
PC-8 TK	ISO-17	
WIN L1	ISO-21	
WIN L2	ISO-60	
WIN L5	ISO-69	
DESKTOP	WIN 3.0	
MC TEXT	SYMBOL	
PS TEXT	WINGDINGS	

• Font Size

Purpose:

To specify the font size for scalable typographic fonts, within the range of 4.00 to 50.00. The default is 12.00.

Font size refers to the height of the characters in the font. One point equals approximately 1/72 of an inch.

NOTE:

- The **Font Size** menu is only displayed for typographic fonts.

• Font Pitch

Purpose:

To specify the font pitch for scalable mono spaced fonts, within the range of 6.00 to 24.00. The default is 10.00.

Font pitch refers to the number of fixed-space characters in a horizontal inch of type. For nonscheduled mono spaced fonts, the pitch is displayed, but cannot be changed.

NOTE:

- The **Font Pitch** menu is only displayed for fixed or mono spaced fonts.

• Form Line

Purpose:

To set the number of lines in a page.

Values:

64* ¹	Sets the value in increments of 1.
5-128	

*¹ The default for **Form Line** varies depending on the default paper size.

The printer sets the amount of space between each line (vertical line spacing) based on the **Form Line** and **Orientation** menu items. Select the correct **Form Line** and **Orientation** before changing **Form Line**.

See also:

- "Orientation" on page 209

• Quantity

Purpose:

To specify the number of copies to print.

Values:

1*	Sets the value in increments of 1.
1-999	

• Image Enhance

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable the Image Enhance feature, which makes the boundary line between black and white smoother to decrease jagged edges and enhance the visual appearance.

Values:

Off	Disables the Image Enhance feature.
On*	Enables the Image Enhance feature.

• Draft Mode

Purpose:

To save toner by printing in the draft mode. The print quality is reduced when you print in the draft mode.

Values:

Disable*	Does not print in the draft mode.
Enable	Prints in the draft mode.

• Line Termination

Purpose:

To add the line termination commands.

Values:

Off*	The line termination command is not added. CR=CR, LF=LF, FF=FF
Add-LF	The LF command is added. CR=CR-LF, LF=LF, FF=FF
Add-CR	The CR command is added. CR=CR, LF=CR-LF, FF=CR-FF
CR-XX	The CR and LF commands are added. CR=CR-LF, LF=CR-LF, FF=CR-FF

• Output Color

Purpose:

To specify the color mode to **Color** or **Black & White**. This setting is used for a print job that does not specify a print mode.

Values:

Black & White	Prints in the black and white mode.
Color*	Prints in the color mode.

PS

Use the **PS Settings** menu to change printer settings that only affect jobs using the PostScript 3 Compatible printer language.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• PS Error Report

Purpose:

To specify whether to print the contents of PostScript 3 Compatible errors.

Values:

Off	Discards the print job without printing an error message.
On*	Prints an error message before it discards the job.

NOTE:

- Instructions from the PS driver override the settings specified on the operator panel.

• PS Job Timeout

Purpose:

To specify the runtime of one PostScript 3 Compatible job.

Values:

Off*	Job timeout does not occur.
On	1min 1 - 900min
	A PostScript 3 Compatible error occurs if processing is not completed after the specified time.

• Output Color

Purpose:

To specify the color mode to **Color** or **Black & White**. This setting is used for a print job which does not specify a print mode.

Values:

Color*	Prints in color mode.
Black & White	Prints in black and white mode.

• Image Depth

Purpose:

To specify the image depth setting to 1 bit or 2 bit.

Values:

1 Bit	Prints in 2 bit color or if you use the other PS driver not provided with this printer, it prints in 1 bit color.
2 Bit*	Prints in 2 bit color.

PDF

Use the **PDF Settings** menu to change printer settings that only affect the PDF jobs.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• Quantity

Purpose:

To specify the number of copies to print.

Values:

1*	Sets the value in increments of 1.
1-999	

• Print Mode

Purpose:

To specify the print mode.

Values:

Normal*	For documents with normal sized characters.
High Quality	For documents with small characters or thin lines, or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.

• PDF Password

Purpose:

To specify the password to print the secure PDF.

Value:

Enter PDF Password	Enter the password to print the secure PDF.
--------------------	---

• Paper Size

Purpose:

To specify the output paper size for PDF.

Values:

Auto*
A4* ¹
Letter* ¹

*¹ The default paper size is displayed.

• Layout

Purpose:

To specify the output layout.

Values:

Fit to Paper*
100% (No Scaling)
2 Pages Up
4 Pages Up

• Output Color

Purpose:

To specify the output color.

Values:

Color*
Black and White

Network

Use the `Network Setup` menu to change the printer settings affecting jobs sent to the printer through the wired or wireless network.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• **Ethernet / Wireless**

NOTE:

- When using a wired network, `Ethernet` is displayed. When the Ethernet cable is disconnected, `Wireless` is displayed.

Purpose:

To confirm or specify network settings.

Wi-Fi

Purpose:

To enable the wireless connection.

Values:

<code>Off</code>
<code>On*</code>

Wireless Setup Wizard

NOTE:

- `Wireless Setup Wizard` is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To configure the wireless network interface. The printer automatically searches and list available access points. Select one of the access points, and enter a passphrase or WEP key to complete the wireless setup. You can also specify and configure the wireless network manually.

Values:

<code>Select access point</code>	Select the access point from the list. The access points are listed starting with the one in the best communication condition.	
<code>Enter 10 or 26 Digit Key</code>	When you select an access point using WEP as the security method, enter the WEP key. For 64bit keys, enter 10 hexadecimal characters. For 128bit keys, enter 26 hexadecimal characters.	
<code>Enter Password</code>	When you select an access point using WPA, WPA2, or Mixed as the encryption type, enter the passphrase of 8 to 63 alphanumeric (or 64 hexadecimal) characters.	

Manual Setup	SSID	SSID	Specify a name to identify the wireless network. Up to 32 alphanumeric characters can be entered.	
	Infrastructure	Infrastructure	Select to configure the wireless settings through the access point such as a wireless router.	
		No Security	Select to configure the wireless settings with no encryption settings.	
		Mixed mode PSK	Select to configure the wireless settings with the Mixed mode PSK encryption. Mixed mode PSK automatically selects the encryption type from either WPA-PSK-AES or WPA2-PSK-AES.	
			Enter Password	Specify the passphrase of 8 to 63 alphanumeric (or 64 hexadecimal) characters.
		WPA2-PSK-AES	Select to configure the wireless settings with the WPA2-PSK-AES encryption.	
			Enter Password	Specify the passphrase of 8 to 63 alphanumeric (or 64 hexadecimal) characters.
		WEP	Select to configure the wireless settings with the WEP encryption.	
			Enter WEP Key	Specify the WEP key to use through the wireless network. For 64bit keys, enter 10 hexadecimal characters. For 128bit keys, enter 26 hexadecimal characters.
			Transmit Key	Select a transmit key from WEP Key 1, WEP Key 2, WEP Key 3, and WEP Key 4.
	Ad-hoc	Ad-hoc	Select to configure the wireless setting without the access point such as a wireless router.	
		No Security	Select to configure the wireless settings with no encryption settings.	
		WEP	Select to configure the wireless settings with the WEP encryption.	
			Enter WEP Key	Specify the WEP key to use through the wireless network. For 64bit keys, enter 10 hexadecimal characters. For 128bit keys, enter 26 hexadecimal characters.
			Transmit Key	Select a transmit key from WEP Key 1, WEP Key 2, WEP Key 3, and WEP Key 4.

WPS Setup

NOTE:

- WPS Setup is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To configure the wireless network using Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS).

Values:

Push Button Configuration	Start Configuration	Configures the wireless setting with WPS-PBC* ¹ .
PIN Code	Start Configuration	Configures the wireless setting using WPS-PIN* ² assigned automatically by the printer.
	Print PIN Code	Prints the PIN code. Confirm it when you enter the PIN code to your computer.

*¹ WPS-PBC stands for Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration.

*² WPS-PIN stands for Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number.

NOTE:

- WPS 2.0 compliant. WPS 2.0 works on access points with the following encryption types: Mixed Mode PSK, WPA-PSK-AES, WPA2-PSK-AES, Open (No Security)

IP Mode

Purpose:

To configure the IP mode.

Values:

Dual Stack*	Uses both IPv4 and IPv6 to set the IP address.
IPv4 Mode	Uses IPv4 to set the IP address.

NOTE:

- To set an IP address for IPv6 in Dual Stack mode, use the CentreWare Internet Services. For more information, refer to the online Help on the CentreWare Internet Services.

TCP/IP

Purpose:

To configure TCP/IP settings. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

Get IP Address	DHCP / AutoIP*	Sets the IP address automatically. A random value in the range of 169.254.1.0 to 169.254.254.255 that is not currently in use on the network is set as the IP address. The subnet mask is set as 255.255.0.0.
	BOOTP	Sets the IP address using BOOTP.
	RARP	Sets the IP address using RARP.
	DHCP	Sets the IP address using DHCP.
	Panel	Use this option when you want to set the IP address manually on the operator panel.
IP Address	When an IP address is being set manually, the IP is allocated to the printer using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.	
Subnet Mask	When an IP address is being set manually, the subnet mask is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 255.255.255.255 cannot be specified as the subnet mask.	
Gateway Address	When an IP address is being set manually, the gateway address is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.	

IPsec

NOTE:

- IPsec feature is available only when IPsec is enabled on the CentreWare Internet Services.

Purpose:

Disables IPsec.

Value:

Disable	Disables IPsec.
---------	-----------------

Reset Wireless

NOTE:

- Reset Wireless feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To reset the wireless connection settings. After executing this function, all information about the access point is cleared.

Value:

Reset	Resets the wireless connection settings.
-------	--

Connection Speed

NOTE:

- Connection Speed feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wired network.

Purpose:

To specify the communication speed and the duplex settings of Ethernet. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto*	Detects the Ethernet settings automatically.
10Base-T Half	Uses 10Base-T Half-duplex.
10Base-T Full	Uses 10Base-T Full-duplex.
100Base-T Half	Uses 100Base-T Half-duplex.
100Base-T Full	Uses 100Base-TX Full-duplex.

• Wi-Fi Direct

Purpose:

To configure the Wi-Fi Direct® settings.

Values:

Wi-Fi Direct	Disable*	Disables the Wi-Fi Direct connection.	
	Enable	Enables the Wi-Fi Direct connection.	
Connection Status	No Entry	Indicates that no device is available.	
	Displays the connected device name and current role.	Disconnect now	Disconnect the connected device when using Wi-Fi Direct.
		Disconnect and Reset Passphrase	Disconnect the connected device and reset passphrase when using Wi-Fi Direct.
Device Name	Displays the printer name.		
SSID	Specify a name to identify the wireless network.		
Passphrase	Print Passphrase	Prints the passphrase. Confirm it when you enter the passphrase to your mobile device.	
	Reset Passphrase	Resets the passphrase.	

Group Role	Group Owner*	Sets your printer as the group owner for Wi-Fi Direct.
	Auto	Automatically resolves the group role for Wi-Fi Direct.
WPS Setup	Push Button Configuration	Configures the Wi-Fi Direct settings with the security method of WPS-PBC.
	PIN Code	Configures the Wi-Fi Direct settings using the PIN code with your mobile device.
	Print PIN Code	Prints the PIN code. Confirm it when you enter the PIN code to your mobile device.
	Reset PIN Code	Resets the PIN code.
P2P TCP/IP	IP Address	Displays the IPv4 address allocated to the printer when using Wi-Fi Direct.
	Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask when using Wi-Fi Direct.

• Protocols

Purpose:

To enable or disable each protocol. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

LPD	Disable	Disables the Line Printer Daemon (LPD) port.
	Enable*	Enables the LPD port.
Port 9100	Disable	Disables the Port9100 port.
	Enable*	Enables the Port9100 port.
IPP* ¹	Disable	Disables IPP port.
	Enable*	Enables IPP port.
WSD (Web Services on Devices)	Disable	Disables Web Services on Devices (WSD) scan.
	Enable*	Enables Web Services on Devices (WSD) scan.
SNMP	Disable	Disables the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) UDP port.
	Enable*	Enables the SNMP UDP port.
StatusMessenger	Disable	Disables the StatusMessenger feature.
	Enable*	Enables the StatusMessenger feature.
Internet Services	Disable	Disables an access to CentreWare Internet Services embedded in the printer.
	Enable*	Enables an access to CentreWare Internet Services embedded in the printer.
Bonjour (mDNS)	Disable	Disables Bonjour (mDNS).
	Enable*	Enables Bonjour (mDNS).
HTTP-SSL/TLS* ²	Disable*	Disables HTTP-SSL/TLS.
	Enable	Enables HTTP-SSL/TLS.
Google Cloud Print	Disable*	Disables Google Cloud Print™.
	Enable	Enables Google Cloud Print.
SNTP	Disable*	Disables SNTP.
	Enable	Enables SNTP.

*¹ To add a printer using an IPP port on Windows®, insert port number "631" in the URL of the printer. For example: http:// [Printer's IP address]:631/ipp

*² HTTP-SSL/TLS is available only when a digital certificate is created using CentreWare Internet Services. For details about creating a digital certificate, see the Help on the CentreWare Internet Services.

• Advanced Settings

Purpose:

To specify advanced network settings.

IP Filter

NOTE:

- IP Filter feature is available only when `Protocols` is set to `LPD` or `Port9100`.

Purpose:

To block data received from certain IP addresses through the wired or wireless network. You can set up to five IP addresses.

Values:

n (n is 1-5)	IP Address	Sets the IP address for Filter n.	
	Subnet Mask	Sets the address mask for Filter n.	
Mode	Off*	Disables the IP Filter feature for Filter n.	
	Accept	Accepts an access from the specified IP address.	
	Reject	Rejects an access from the specified IP address.	

Adobe Protocol

Purpose:

To specify the PostScript 3 Compatible communication protocol for a parallel interface, you can configure the `Adobe Protocol` settings for the wired network. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto*	Sets the PostScript 3 Compatible communications protocol automatically.
Standard	Sets the PostScript 3 Compatible communications protocol to <code>Standard</code> .
BCP	Sets the PostScript 3 Compatible communications protocol to <code>BCP</code> .
TBCP	Sets the PostScript 3 Compatible communications protocol to <code>TBCP</code> .

• Reset Network Setup

Purpose:

To initialize the network settings stored in the NVM (non-volatile memory). After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all network settings are reset to their default values.

Value:

Reset	Initializes the network settings stored in the NVM.
-------	---

Fax Settings

Use the `Fax Settings` menu to configure the basic fax settings.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• Fax Line Settings

Purpose:

To configure basic settings for the fax line.

Fax Number

Purpose:

To set the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of a fax message.

NOTE:

- Make sure to specify Fax Number before using Junk Fax Filter.

Region

Purpose:

To select the region where the printer is used. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

Unknown*
Australia
Cambodia
China
Hong Kong
Indonesia
Laos
Malaysia
Myanmar
New Zealand
Philippines
Singapore
South Korea
Taiwan
Thailand
Vietnam

Company Name

Purpose:

To set the sender name to be printed on the header on faxes.

Line Type

Purpose:

To select the default line type. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

PSTN*	Uses PSTN.
PBX	Uses PBX.

Line Monitor

Purpose:

To set the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.

Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the line monitor.
Min	Sets the volume of the line monitor to minimum.
Middle*	Sets the volume of the line monitor to middle.
Max	Sets the volume of the line monitor to maximum.

DRPD Pattern

Purpose:

To provide a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern.

Values:

Pattern1-7	DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies. DRPD patterns are specified by your telephone company. The patterns provided with your printer are shown below: Pattern1  Pattern2  Pattern3  Pattern4*  Pattern5  Pattern6  Pattern7  Ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service. For example, Pattern7 is the New Zealand FaxAbility distinctive ringing pattern: rings for 400 ms, stops for 800 ms, rings for 400 ms and stops for 1400 ms. This pattern is repeated over and over again. This printer only responds to Distinctive Alert cadence(s) DA4 in New Zealand.
------------	---

Extel Hook Threshold

Purpose:

To select the external telephone hook detection threshold for the condition in which a telephone line is not being used.

Values:

Lower	Sets the external telephone hook detection threshold to Lower.
Normal*	Sets the external telephone hook detection threshold to Normal.
Higher	Sets the external telephone hook detection threshold to Higher.

• Incoming Defaults

Purpose:

To configure settings for incoming fax.

Receive Mode

Purpose:

To select the default fax receiving mode.

Values:

TEL Mode	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external phone and then pressing the remote receive code, or by selecting <code>Manual Receive</code> in <code>OnHook</code> to <code>On</code> (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine) and then pressing the  (Start) button. For details about <code>Manual Receive</code> , see "Receiving a Fax Manually in the TEL Mode" on page 188.
FAX Mode*	Automatically receives faxes.
TEL/FAX Mode	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in <code>Auto Receive TEL/FAX</code> , and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
Ans/FAX Mode	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication in your region is serial, this mode is not supported.
DRPD Mode	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.

Ring Tone Volume

Purpose:

To set the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when `Receive Mode` is set to `TEL/FAX Mode`.

Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the ring tone.
Min	Sets the volume of the ring tone to minimum.
Middle	Sets the volume of the ring tone to middle.
Max*	Sets the volume of the ring tone to maximum.

Auto Answer Setup

Purpose:

To configure settings for automatic fax reception.

Values:

Auto Answer Fax	0* 0-255	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call. The value is set in increments of 1 second.
Auto Answer TEL/FAX	6* 0-255	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call. The value is set in increments of 1 second.
Auto Answer Ans/Fax	21* 0-255	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call. The value is set in increments of 1 second.

Junk Fax Filter

Purpose:

To reject unwanted faxes by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Fax Address Book.

Values:

Off*	Does not reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
On	Rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers.

Secure Receive

NOTE:

- Secure Receive feature is available only when `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`.

Purpose:

To specify whether to require a passcode to receive faxes, and to set or change the passcode.

Values:

Secure Receive Set	Disable*	Does not require a passcode to receive faxes.
	Enable	Requires a passcode to receive faxes.
Change Password* ¹	0000-9999	Sets or change the passcode required to receive faxes

*¹ This item is available only when `Secure Receive Set` is set to `Enable`.

Forward Settings

NOTE:

- The `E-mail and Print` feature is available only when E-mail information and Forwarding E-mail Address are registered. For information on E-mail, see the Help on CentreWare Internet Services.
- The `Forward to Server` and `Forward to Server and Print` feature are available only when information about shared folders and servers are registered in Forward to Server Settings. For details about shared folders on servers, see the Help on the CentreWare Internet Services.
- The forwarding fax job may fail when `Forward Settings` is set to `Forward to E-mail`. Because your printer judges that forwarding is finished when a fax reaches the first SMTP server even if it does not reach the destination e-mail address. Also your printer deletes the received faxes, so you cannot resend or print the fax job.

Purpose:

To set whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.

Values:

Off*	Does not forward incoming faxes.
Forward	Forwards incoming faxes to a specified destination. Prints incoming faxes if an error occurs during the transfer.
	Forwarding Number Specifies the Fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.
Forward and Print	Forwards incoming faxes to a specified destination and also prints incoming faxes.
	Forwarding Number Specifies the Fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.
Forward to E-mail	Forwards incoming faxes to a specified e-mail address.
E-mail and Print	Forwards incoming faxes to a specified e-mail address and also prints incoming faxes.
Forward to Server	Forwards incoming faxes to a specified server.
Forward to Server and Print	Prints incoming faxes and also forwards them to a specified server.

Remote Receive

Purpose:

To receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.

Values:

Off*	Does not receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
On	Receives a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
Remote Receive Tone	Specifies the tone in two digits to start Remote Receive.

Discard Size

Purpose:

To set the printer to discard images or any text at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit the output paper.

Values:

Off	Prints excess images or text at the bottom of a fax page without discarding it.
On	Discards any excess images or text.
Auto Reduction*	Automatically reduces a fax page to fit it onto the appropriate paper size.

• Transmission Defaults

Purpose:

To configure settings for transmitting fax.

Auto Redial Setup

Purpose:

To configure settings for automatic redial.

Values:

Number of Redial	3* ¹ 0-9	Sets the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial. The value is set in increments of 1.
Redial Interval	1* 1-15	Sets the interval between redial attempts. The value is set in increments of 1 minute.
Interval Timer	8* 3-255	Sets the interval between re-send attempts. The value is set in increments of 1 second.

*¹ The default for Number of Redial varies depending on region-specific factory.

Dial Type

Purpose:

To select the dialing type.

Values:

PB*	Uses tone dialing.
DP (10PPS)	Sets DP (10PPS) (Dial Pulse, 10 Pulse Per Second) as the dial type.
DP (20PPS)	Sets DP (20PPS) (Dial Pulse, 20 Pulse Per Second) as the dial type.

NOTE:

- The dialing type that you can select differs depending on the region setting.

Prefix Dial

Purpose:

To select whether to set a prefix dial number.

Values:

Off*	Does not set a prefix dial number.
On	Sets a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Number	Sets prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).

Fax Cover Page

Purpose:

To set whether to attach a cover page to faxes.

Values:

Off*	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
On	Attaches a cover page to faxes.

Send Header

Purpose:

To print the information of the sender on the header of the faxes.

Values:

Off*	Does not print the sender's information on the header of faxes.
On	Prints the sender's information on the header of faxes.

ECM

Purpose:

To set whether to enable or disable the Error Correction Mode (ECM). To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.

Values:

Off	Disables the ECM.
On*	Enables the ECM.

Modem Speed

Purpose:

To adjust the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.

Values:

2.4 Kbps
4.8 Kbps
9.6 Kbps
14.4 Kbps
33.6 Kbps*

Display Manual Fax Recipients

Purpose:

To set whether to display the fax number of the recipient on the sending fax screen when manually sending a fax.

Values:

Off	Does not display the fax number when manually sending a fax.
On*	Displays the fax number when manually sending a fax.

• Fax Reports

Purpose:

To configure settings for fax reports.

Fax Activity

Purpose:

To set whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.

Values:

Auto Print*	Automatically prints a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
No Auto Print	Does not automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.

Fax Transmit

Purpose:

To set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission.

Values:

Print Always	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error*	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission.

Fax Broadcast

Purpose:

To set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.

Values:

Print Always*	Prints a broadcast report after every fax broadcast.
Print On Error	Prints a broadcast report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable	Does not print a broadcast report after a fax broadcast to multiple destinations.

System Settings

Use the **System Settings** menu to configure a variety of printer features.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• General

Purpose:

To configure general settings for the printer.

Power Saver Timer

Purpose:

To specify the time for transition to the power saver mode.

Values:

Low Power Timer	5min*	Specifies the time taken by the printer to enter the low power mode after it finishes a job.
	5-30min	
Sleep Timer	6min*	Specifies the time taken by the printer to enter the sleep mode after it has entered the low power mode.
	1-6min	

When you specify 5min for **Low Power Timer**, the printer enters the power saver mode 5 minutes after it finishes a job. This uses much less energy, but requires more warm-up time for the printer. Specify 5min if your printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting and you notice lights flickering.

Select a high value if your printer is in constant use. In most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to operate with minimum warm-up time. Select a value between 5 and 30 minutes for **Low Power Timer** if you want a balance between energy consumption and a shorter warm-up period.

The printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the power saver mode when it receives data from the computer or remote fax machine. You can also change the status of the printer to the standby mode by pressing the  (**Power Saver**) button on the operator panel.

Date & Time

Purpose:

To specify the date and time formats.

Values:

Time Zone		Sets the time zone.
Date	Sets the date depending on the Format settings.	
	Format	YYYY/MM/DD
		DD/MM/YYYY*
Time	Sets the time.	
	Format	12 Hour
		24 Hour

Measurements

Purpose:

To specify the default measurement unit displayed after the numeric value on the operator panel.

Values:

Millimeters (mm) *	Selects millimeter as the default measurement unit.
Inches (")	Selects inch as the default measurement unit.

NOTE:

- The default for **Measurements** varies depending on other settings, such as **Region** and **Original Size**.

Display Brightness

Purpose:

To adjust the screen brightness of the touch panel.

Values:

5*	Sets the brightness in 10 levels, with 10 being the brightest.
1-10	

Audio

Purpose:

To configure settings for tones emitted by the printer during operation or when a warning message appears.

Values:

Panel Select Tone	Off*	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the operator panel entry is correct.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Panel Alert Tone	Off*	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel entry is incorrect.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the operator panel entry is incorrect.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Job Tone	Off*	Does not emit a tone when a job is complete.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a job is complete.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Alert Tone	Off*	Does not emit a tone when a problem occurs.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a problem occurs.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Out of Paper	Off*	Does not emit a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Auto Clear Alert	Off*	Does not emit a tone 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
	Soft	Emits a tone 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
	Normal	
	Loud	
All Tones	Off*	Disables all the alert tones.
	Soft	Sets the volume of all the alert tones at once.
	Normal	
	Loud	

Low Toner Alert Message

Purpose:

To specify whether to show the alert message when the toner is low.

Values:

Off	Does not show the alert message when the toner is low.
On*	Shows the alert message when the toner is low.

Off Hook Wake Up

Purpose:

To specify whether to wake up from the low power or sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.

Values:

Off	Does not wake up from the low power or sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.
On*	Wakes up from the low power or sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.

RAM Disk

Purpose:

To allocate memory to the RAM disk file system for the Secure Print features. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Off	Does not allocate memory to the RAM disk file system. Secure Print jobs will abort and be recorded to the job log.
On*	40 MB* 40-80 MB
	Sets the allocation of memory to the RAM disk file system in increments of 40 MB.

NOTE:

- Restart your printer when you change the settings for the `RAM Disk` menu.

Fax Server Address Book

Purpose:

To specify whether to search the phone numbers from the Address Book for the LDAP server.

Values:

Off*	Does not search the phone numbers from the Address Book for the LDAP server.
On	Searches the phone numbers from the Address Book for the LDAP server.

NOTE:

- You can search the phone numbers only from the local Address Book when `Fax Server Address Book` is set to `Off`.

E-mail Server Address Book

Purpose:

To specify whether to search the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.

Values:

Off*	Does not search the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.
On	Searches the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.

NOTE:

- You can search the e-mail addresses only from the local Address Book when `E-mail Server Address Book` is set to `Off`.

Power On Wizard

Purpose:

To perform initial settings for the printer.

See also:

- "Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel" on page 32

Values:

Start	Performs the initial settings for the printer.
-------	--

Show Paper Size/Type Error

Purpose:

Specifies whether to use paper of a different size when the paper that is loaded in the standard 150 sheet tray does not match the paper size settings for the current job.

Values:

On	Shows the alert message when the paper size loaded in the tray is different from the paper size set for the current job.
On (except A4/Ltr)*	Shows the alert message except for the time A4 size paper is loaded in the tray and letter size is set for the current job and for the other way around.
Off	No tray size substitute accepted.

• Timers

Purpose:

To configure timer settings.

Control Panel

Purpose:

To specify the time for the printer to automatically return to the standby mode. When the setting is not complete in the specified time, the previous setting is restored.

Values:

45 seconds*
1 Minute
2 Minute
3 Minute
4 Minute

Fault Timeout

Purpose:

To specify the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally. The print job is canceled if the time-out time is exceeded.

Values:

Off	Disables the fault time-out.
On*	60 sec*
	3-300 sec
	Sets the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally.

Job Timeout

Purpose:

To specify the amount of time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer. The print job is canceled if the time-out time is exceeded.

Values:

Off		Disables the job time-out.
On*	30 sec*	Sets the time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
	5-300 sec	

Maintenance

Use the Maintenance menu for maintenance work including initialization of the NVM (non-volatile memory).

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• Adjust Paper Type

Purpose:

To adjust the paper type.

Values:

Plain	Lightweight
	Heavyweight*
Labels	Lightweight
	Heavyweight*

• Adjust BTR

Purpose:

To specify the optimum voltage settings for printing for the transfer roller (BTR). To lower the voltage, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. If you see mottles on the print output, try to increase the voltage. If you see white spots on the print output, try to decrease the voltage.

NOTE:

- The print quality changes depending on the values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	0*
	-3 - 3
Bond	0*
	-3 - 3
Light Card	0*
	-3 - 3
LW Gloss Card	0*
	-3 - 3
Labels	0*
	-3 - 3
Recycled	0*
	-3 - 3
Envelope	0*
	-3 - 3

• Adjust Fusing Unit

Purpose:

To specify the optimum temperature settings for printing for the fusing unit. To lower the temperature, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. When the printed paper has curled, try to lower the temperature. When the toner does not fuse on the paper properly, try to increase the temperature.

NOTE:

- The print quality changes depending on the values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	0*
	-3 - 3
Bond	0*
	-3 - 3
Light Card	0*
	-3 - 3
LW Gloss Card	0*
	-3 - 3
Labels	0*
	-3 - 3
Recycled	0*
	-3 - 3
Envelope	0*
	-3 - 3

• Auto Reg Adjust

Purpose:

To automatically start adjusting color registration.

Values:

Off	Does not automatically adjust color registration.
On*	Automatically adjusts color registration.

• Color Registration

Purpose:

To manually perform color registration adjustment.

Manual color registration adjustments are required when the printer is initially installed and after the printer is moved.

Values:

Auto Registration	Start	Automatically performs color registration correction.
Print Registration Chart	Print	Prints a color registration chart. The color registration chart prints a lattice pattern of yellow magenta, and cyan lines. On the chart, find the values on the right side that are next to the line that is perfectly straight for each of the three colors. If the value for this line is 0, color registration adjustment is not required. If the value for this line is any value other than 0, specify the adjustment values under lateral adjustment and process adjustment in <code>Enter Registration values</code>.

Enter Registration Values	LY	-5 to +5	Sets lateral (perpendicular to paper feed direction) and process (paper feed direction) color adjustment values individually for yellow magenta, and cyan. Enter a number in order of color adjustment values individually for yellow, magenta, and cyan.
	LM		
	LC		
	RY	-5 to +5	Enter a number in order of lateral adjustment (left), lateral adjustment (right), and process adjustment. Select OK to save all the settings.
	RM		
	RC		
	Y	-5 to +5	
	M		
	C		

NOTE:

- Make sure that you remove the paper from the standard 150 sheet tray before performing **Auto Registration**.

• Clean Developer

Purpose:

To rotate the developer motor and stir the toner in the toner cartridge.

Values:

Start	Stirs the toner in a new toner cartridge.
-------	---

• Toner Refresh

Purpose:

To use up a toner cartridge when you need to replace it before the end of its life, or to stir the toner in a new toner cartridge.

Values:

Yellow (Y)	Refresh	Cleans the toner in the yellow toner cartridge.
Magenta (M)	Refresh	Cleans the toner in the magenta toner cartridge.
Cyan (C)	Refresh	Cleans the toner in the cyan toner cartridge.
Black (K)	Refresh	Cleans the toner in the black toner cartridge.

• BTR Refresh

Purpose:

To specify whether to execute counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.

Values:

Start	Automatically executes counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.
-------	--

• Machine Life

Purpose:

To specify whether to continue print operations when the printer comes to the end of its service life.

Values:

Continue Print	Continues print operations after the end of service life.
Stop Print*	Stops print operations at the end of service life.

NOTE:

- When the printer no longer operates showing the error code 191-310 on the touch panel, press the 8 and 0 buttons on the number pad at the same time for three seconds. The top service menu screen with message appears, and change the **Machine Life** setting to **Continue Print**. Then, you can keep using the printer.
- Although you can keep using the printer after the end of its service life by changing the setting to **Continue Print**, the printing quality is not guaranteed.

• Initialize NVM

Purpose:

To initialize NVM for system parameters, Address Book data for fax, or Address Book data for e-mail and server address. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the menu parameters or data, except the parameters for the network, are reset to their factory default values.

See also:

- "Resetting to Factory Defaults" on page 256

Values:

User Fax Section	Initialize	Initializes the fax number entries in the Address Book.
User Scan Section	Initialize	Initializes the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.
System Section	Initialize	Initializes the system parameters.

• Non-Genuine Toner

Purpose:

To use toner cartridges of another manufacturer.

NOTE:

- Using a non-Fuji Xerox toner cartridge may severely damage your printer. The warranty does not cover damages caused by using non-Fuji Xerox toner cartridges.

Values:

Off*	Does not use toner cartridges of another manufacturer.
On	Uses toner cartridges of another manufacturer.

• Adjust Altitude

Purpose:

To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The discharge phenomenon for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure. Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.

NOTE:

- An incorrect altitude adjustment setting leads to problems such as poor printing quality and incorrect indication of remaining toner.

Values:

0m*	Specifies the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
1000m	
2000m	
3000m	

• Clear Job History

Purpose:

To clear the job history of all finished jobs.

Values:

Start	Clears the log of all finished print job.
-------	---

• Adjust Touchscreen

Purpose:

To calibrate the touch panel.

Secure Settings

Use the **Secure Settings** menu to set a password to limit access to the menus. This prevents items from being changed accidentally.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• Panel Lock

Purpose:

To restrict access to **Admin Settings** and **Report / List** with a password.

See also:

- "Panel Lock Function" on page 250

NOTE:

- You can select **Disable** for **Panel Lock Set** when all items under **Service Lock** are set to **Unlocked** and **Secure Receive Set** is set to **Disable**.

Values:

Panel Lock Set	Disable*	Does not restrict access to Admin Settings and Report / List with a password.
	Enable	Restricts access to Admin Settings and Report / List with a password.
Change Password	0000*-9999	Sets or changes the password required to access Admin Settings and Report / List .

• Service Lock

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable each of the printer services or to require a password to use the services, and to set or change the password.

See also:

- "Limiting Access to Printer Operations" on page 252

NOTE:

- You can access to the items under **Service Lock** only when **Panel Lock Set** is set to **Enable**.

Values:

Copy	Unlocked*	Enables the Copy service.
	Password Locked	Enables the Copy service, but requires a passcode to use the service.
	Color Password Locked	Enables the Copy service with a color mode, but requires a passcode.
	Locked	Disables the Copy service.
E-mail	Unlocked*	Enables the E-mail service.
	Password Locked	Enables the E-mail service, but requires a passcode to use the service.
	Locked	Disables the E-mail service.
Fax	Unlocked*	Enables the Fax service.
	Password Locked	Enables the Fax services, but requires a passcode to send faxes (does not require a passcode to receive incoming faxes).
	Locked	Disables the Fax service (the printer will not send or receive faxes).
Scan to Network	Unlocked*	Enables the Scan To Network service.
	Password Locked	Enables the Scan To Network service, but requires a passcode to use the service.
	Locked	Disables the Scan To Network service.

Scan To PC / WSD Scan ^{*1}		Unlocked*	Enables the Scan To PC / WSD (Web Services on Devices) Scan service.
		Password Locked	Enables the Scan To PC / WSD (Web Services on Devices) Scan service, but requires a passcode to use the service.
		Locked	Disables the Scan To PC / WSD (Web Services on Devices) Scan service.
Scan To USB		Unlocked*	Enables the Scan To USB service.
		Password Locked	Enables the Scan To USB service, but requires a passcode to use the service.
		Locked	Disables the Scan To USB service.
Print from USB		Unlocked*	Enables the Print from USB service.
		Password Locked	Enables the Print from USB service, but requires a passcode.
		Color Password Locked	Enables the Print from USB service with a color mode, but requires a passcode.
		Locked	Disables the Print from USB service.
ID Card Copy		Unlocked*	Enables the ID Card Copy service.
		Locked	Disables the ID Card Copy service.
USB Services	Show USB Pop Up Menu	Disable	Does not show the USB Drive Detected menu when a USB storage device is inserted in to the printer.
		Enable*	Shows the USB Drive Detected menu when a USB storage device is inserted in to the printer.
	Display USB Memory Services	Hide until USB inserted	Hides menus concerning USB storage device until a USB storage device is inserted to the printer.
		Always Display*	Menus concerning USB storage device are shown without a USB storage device inserted to the printer.
Change Password			Changes the passcode that is set under the Service Lock menu.

^{*1} WSD stands for Web Services on Devices.

• Edit E-mail From Field

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable editing of the transmission source when you use Scan to E-mail.

Values:

Disable	Disables editing of the transmission source.
Enable*	Enables editing of the transmission source.

• Confirm Recipients

NOTE:

- If the Confirm Recipients menu is set to Confirm Recipient, recipients can only be selected from Fax Address Book. You cannot directly enter an address or fax number.

Purpose:

To specify whether to confirm the recipient before sending a fax or scan.

Values:

No Confirmation*	Does not display a screen to reconfirm the recipient before the job is actually sent.
Reconfirm Recipient	Displays a screen to reconfirm the recipient before the job is actually sent.

• Domain Filtering

NOTE:

- Set the domains from SMTP Domain Filtering on the CentreWare Internet Services.

Purpose:

To specify whether to only send e-mails to specified domains.

Values:

Disable*	Disables Domain Filtering.
Enable	Only allows e-mails to be sent to specified domains.

• Software Download

Purpose:

To enable or disable download of firmware updates.

Values:

Disable	Disables firmware updates.
Enable*	Enables firmware updates.

• Display of Network Information

Purpose:

To show or hide network information in the message field of the top service menu screen.

Values:

Show IPv4 Address*	Shows the IPv4 address of the printer.
Show Host Name	Shows the host name of the printer.
Hide Network Information	Does not show network information.

• Login Attempts

NOTE:

- Login Attempts feature is available only when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable.

Purpose:

To specify the number of error entry attempts allowed when you log in as an administrator in the Admin Settings and Report / List menu.

Values:

Off*	Does not allow an administrator to log in after one error entry attempt.
On	5*
	1-10

USB Setup

Use the USB Settings menu to change printer settings affecting a USB port.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• Port Status

Purpose:

To enable or disable the USB interface.

Values:

Disable	Disables the USB interface.
Enable*	Enables the USB interface.

• PS Data Format

Purpose:

To specify the PostScript 3 Compatible communication protocol. You can configure the **PS Data Format** settings for the wired network.

Values:

Auto*	Sets the PostScript 3 Compatible communications protocol automatically.
Standard	Sets the PostScript 3 Compatible communications protocol to Standard .
BCP	Sets the PostScript 3 Compatible communications protocol to BCP .
TBCP	Sets the PostScript 3 Compatible communications protocol to TBCP .

■ Defaults Settings

Use the **Defaults Settings** menu to configure the default copy, scan, and fax settings of the printer.

Copy Defaults

Use the **Copy Defaults** menus to configure a variety of copy features.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• Output Color

Purpose:

To select color or black and white copying.

Values:

Full Color*	Copies in color mode.
Black & White	Copies in black and white mode.

• Collation

Purpose:

To sort the copy job.

Values:

Uncollated*	Does not sort the copy job.
Collated	Sorts the copy job.

• Reduce / Enlarge

Purpose:

To set the default copy reduction/enlargement ratio.

Values:

mm series

100%*
50%
70%
A4 → A5
84%
B5 → A5
118%
A5 → B5

141%
A5 → A4
200%

inch series

100%*
50%
64%
78%
8.5 × 14" → 8.5 × 11"
129%
8.5 × 11" → 8.5 × 14"
154%
200%

NOTE:

- You can also use the number pad to input the desired zoom ratio from 25% to 400%, or select  to enlarge the zoom ratio or select  to reduce the zoom ratio in 1% intervals.
- This item is available only when **Sides Per Pages** is set to **Off** or **Manual**.

• Original Size

Purpose:

To specify the default document size.

Values:

mm series

A4* ¹
A5
B5
Letter
US Folio
Legal
Executive

*¹ The default for **Original Size** varies depending on region-specific factory.

inch series

Letter
US Folio
Legal
A4* ¹
A5
B5
Executive

*¹ The default for **Original Size** varies depending on region-specific factory.

NOTE:

- When **Auto** is selected, the printer assumes that the document size is the size of the print media loaded in the standard 150 sheet tray.

• Original Type

Purpose:

To select the copy image quality.

Values:

Photo & Text*	Suitable for documents with both text and photos/gray tones.
Text	Suitable for documents with text.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

• Lighten / Darken

Purpose:

To set the default copy density level.

Values:

Lighten2	Makes the copy lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighten1	
Normal*	Works well with standard type or printed documents.
Darken1	Makes the copy darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darken2	

• Sharpness

Purpose:

To set the default sharpness level.

Values:

Sharpen2	Makes the scanned image sharper than the original.
Sharpen1	
Normal*	Does not make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.
Soften1	Makes the scanned image softer than the original.
Soften2	

• Auto Background Suppression

Purpose:

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.

Values:

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On*	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.

• Color Balance

Color Balance

Purpose:

To specify the default color balance level within the range of -3 to +3.

Values:

Red	-3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of density red.
Green	-3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of density green.
Blue	-3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of density blue.

Gray Balance

Purpose:

To specify the default gray balance level within the range of -3 to +3.

Values:

Gray	-3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of density gray.
------	----------	---

• Sides Per Pages

Purpose:

To print two original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.

Values:

Off*	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce/Enlarge.

• Edge Erase

Purpose:

To specify the value of the top and bottom margins.

Values:

Top/Bottom (0 → 50 mm) (0 → 2.0 inch)	4* mm (0.2* inch)	Sets the value in increments of 1 mm (0.1 inch).
Left/Right (0 → 50 mm) (0 → 2.0 inch)	4* mm (0.2* inch)	Sets the value in increments of 1 mm (0.1 inch).
Middle (0 → 50 mm) (0 → 2.0 inch)	0* mm (0* inch)	Sets the value in increments of 1 mm (0.1 inch).

• Paper Error

Purpose:

To specify whether to display the paper size error.

Values:

Off*
On

Fax Defaults

Use the **Fax Defaults** menus to configure a variety of fax features.

NOTE:

- The Fax service cannot be used unless you set up a region code under **Region**. The touch panel displays an error message when the region code is not set up.
- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• Resolution

Purpose:

To specify the resolution level to be used for fax transmission.

Values:

Standard*	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The Super Fine mode is enabled only if the receiving device also supports the super fine resolution. See the notes below.
Ultra Fine	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.

NOTE:

- Faxes scanned in the Super Fine mode transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

• Original Type

Purpose:

To select the default document type.

Values:

Text*	Suitable for documents with text.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

• Lighten / Darken

Purpose:

To set the default copy density level.

Values:

Lighten2	Makes the fax lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighten1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darken1	Makes the fax darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darken2	

• Delayed Send

Purpose:

To set a specific time for the fax transmission to start. Once the Delayed Send is activated, your printer stores all of the documents to be faxed into its memory and sends them at the specified time. After faxing in the Delayed Send mode is complete, the data in the memory is cleared.

Values:

Hours	Specifies the fax transmission start time when sending a fax at a specified time.
Minutes	

Scan Defaults

Use the `Scan Defaults` menus to configure a variety of scanner features.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• **File Format**

Purpose:

To specify the file format to save the scanned image.

Values:

PDF*
Multi-Page TIFF
TIFF
JPEG

• **Output Color**

Purpose:

To specify whether to scan in color, black and white, or gray scale.

Values:

Color*	Scans in color.
Black & White	Scans in black and white.
Gray Scale	Scans in gray scale.

• **Resolution**

Purpose:

To specify the default scan resolution.

Values:

200 dpi*
300 dpi
400 dpi
600 dpi

• **Original Size**

Purpose:

To specify the default document size.

Values:

mm series

A4* ¹
A5
B5
Letter
US Folio
Legal
Executive

^{*1} The default for `Original Size` varies depending on region-specific factory.

inch series

Letter
US Folio
Legal
A4* ¹
A5
B5
Executive

*¹ The default for Original Size varies depending on region-specific factory.

• Lighten / Darken

Purpose:

To set the default scan density level.

Values:

Lighten2	Makes the scanned image lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighten1	
Normal*	Works well with standard type or printed documents.
Darken1	Makes the scanned image darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darken2	

• Sharpness

Purpose:

To set the default sharpness level.

Values:

Sharpen2	Makes the scanned image sharper than the original.
Sharpen1	
Normal*	Does not make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.
Soften1	Makes the scanned image softer than the original.
Soften2	

• Auto Background Suppression

Purpose:

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.

Values:

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On*	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.

• Edge Erase

Purpose:

To specify the value of the top and bottom margins.

Values:

Top/Bottom (0 → 50 mm) (0 → 2.0 inch)	2* mm (0.1* inch)	Sets the value in increments of 1 mm (0.1 inch).
Left/Right (0 → 50 mm) (0 → 2.0 inch)	2* mm (0.1* inch)	Sets the value in increments of 1 mm (0.1 inch).
Middle (0 → 50 mm) (0 → 2.0 inch)	0* mm (0* inch)	Sets the value in increments of 1 mm (0.1 inch).

• TIFF File Format

Purpose:

To specify the default TIFF file format.

Values:

TIFF V6	Sets the default TIFF file format to TIFF V6.
TTN2*	Sets the default Tiff file format to TTN2.

• Quality / File Size

Purpose:

To specify the image compression level.

Values:

Small	Sets the image compression level to smaller.
Normal*	Sets the image compression level to Normal.
Large	Sets the image compression level to larger.

• Max E-Mail Size

Purpose:

To specify the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent, within the range of 50 K bytes to 16384 K bytes. The default is 2048 K bytes.

• File Name

Purpose:

To specify the detailed setting for file name.

Values:

Auto*	Sets the default file name.
Add Prefix	Adds texts in front of the file name.
Text String	Specifies the texts that are added when Add Prefix is selected.
Add Suffix	Adds texts after the file name.
Text String	Specifies the texts that are added when Add Suffix is selected.

• Create Folder

Purpose:

To specify whether to create a folder when saving scanned images.

Values:

Off	Does not create a folder when saving a scanned image.
On*	Creates a folder when saving a scanned image.

Print from USB Defaults

To modify the defaults for the `Print from USB` menu.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• Output Color

Purpose:

To specify whether to print in black and white or in color.

Values:

Full Color*	Prints in color.
Black & White	Prints in black and white.

• Sides Per Pages

Purpose:

To print two or four original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.

Values:

Off*	Prints one page on one side of a sheet of paper.
2 Sides per Page	Prints two pages on one side of a sheet of paper.
4 Sides per Page	Prints four pages on one side of a sheet of paper.

• PDF Password

Purpose:

To enter the password when you print the secure PDF job.

Values:

Enter PDF Password	Enter the password to print the secure PDF job.
--------------------	---

■ Paper Tray Settings

Use the `Tray Contents` menu to define the print media loaded in the standard 150 sheet tray.

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

Purpose:

To specify the default paper size loaded in the standard 150 sheet tray.

Values:

Display Tray Prompt	Enter a check to display a pop-up message that prompts to set Type and Size when paper is loaded in the standard 150 sheet tray. The factory default is on (check).
---------------------	---

Size mm series	A4* ¹				
	A5				
	B5				
	Monarch Env.				
	Letter				
	Folio (8.5 × 13")				
	Legal				
	Executive				
	#10 Env.				
	Monarch L				
	DL Env.				
	DL Env. L				
	C5 Env.				
	Custom Size	Width (x)	210 mm* 77 – 215 mm	Specifies the width of the custom size paper.	
		Length (y)	297 mm* 127 – 355 mm		Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
	inch series	Letter			
		US Folio			
Legal					
Monarch Env.					
A4* ¹					
A5					
B5					
Executive					
#10 Env.					
Monarch L					
DL Env.					
DL Env. L					
C5 Env.					
Custom Size		Width (x)	8.3 inches* 3.0 – 8.5 inches	Specifies the width of the custom size paper.	
		Length (y)	11.7 inches* 5.0 – 14.0 inches		Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
Type		Plain* ¹			
		Bond			
	Light Card				
	LW Gloss Card				
	Labels				
	Recycled				
	Envelope				
	Plain S2				
	Bond S2				
	Light Card S2				
	LW Gloss Card S2				
	Recycled S2				

*¹ The default for Size varies depending on region-specific factory.

NOTE:

- For more information on supported paper sizes, see "Usable Print Media" on page 95.

■ Language Settings

Panel Settings

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

Purpose:

To determine the language of the text on the touch panel.

Values:

English*
Traditional Chinese
Simplified Chinese
Korean

Keyboard Layout

NOTE:

- The value marked by an asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

Purpose:

To determine the keyboard layout of the touch panel.

Values:

QWERTY*
AZERTY
QWERTZ

Panel Lock Function

When your printer is configured as a network printer available to a number of users, the access to **Admin Settings** and **Report / List** can be limited by enabling the Panel Lock function. This prevents unauthorized users from changing the settings made by the administrator. However, you can select settings for individual print jobs using the print driver.

■ Enabling the Panel Lock

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab.
- 3 Select **Admin Settings**.
- 4 Select **Secure Settings**.
- 5 Select **Panel Lock**.
- 6 Select **Panel Lock Set**.
- 7 Select **Enable**, and then select **OK**.
- 8 Enter the new passcode, and then select **OK**.
- 9 Re-enter the passcode to confirm the passcode that you entered, and then select **OK**.

NOTE:

- Be sure to remember the password. The procedure described below allows you to reset the password. However, the settings for the Address Book would be cleared.
- 1 Turn off the printer.
 - 2 Turn on the printer with holding the  (**System**) button.

■ Changing the Panel Lock Password

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab.
- 3 Select **Admin Settings**.
- 4 Select **Secure Settings**.
- 5 Select **Panel Lock**.
- 6 Select **Change Password**.
- 7 Enter the current passcode, and then select **OK**.
- 8 Enter the new passcode, and then select **OK**.
- 9 Re-enter the passcode to confirm the passcode that you entered, and then select **OK**.

■ Disabling the Panel Lock

NOTE:

- You can select `Disable` for `Panel Lock Set` when all items under `Service Lock` are set to `Unlocked` and `Secure Receive Set` is set to `Disable`.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the `Tools` tab.
- 3 Select `Admin Settings`.
- 4 Enter the new passcode, and then select `OK`.
- 5 Select `Secure Settings`.
- 6 Select `Panel Lock`.
- 7 Select `Panel Lock Set`.
- 8 Select `Disable`, and then select `OK`.
- 9 Enter the current passcode, and then select `OK`.

Limiting Access to Printer Operations

Enabling the Copy lock, E-mail lock, Fax lock, Scan lock, Print from USB lock, and ID Card Copy lock options limits access to copy, e-mail, fax, scan, Print from USB, and ID card copy operations.

Taking Fax lock as an example, the following procedure explains how to enable or disable the option. Use the same procedure to enable or disable the Copy lock, E-mail lock, Fax lock, Scan lock, Print from USB lock, and ID Card Copy lock.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab.
- 3 Select **Admin Settings**.
- 4 Select **Secure Settings**.
- 5 Select **Panel Lock**.
- 6 Select **Panel Lock Set**.
- 7 Select **Enable**, and then select **OK**.
- 8 Enter the new passcode using the number pad and then select **OK**.
- 9 Re-enter the passcode and then select **OK**.

NOTE:

- The default password is 0000.

- 10 Select .
- 11 Select **Service Lock**.
- 12 Select **FAX**.
- 13 Select one of the following option, and then select **OK**.
 - Unlocked
 - Password Locked
 - Locked
 - Color Password Locked (available only for the Copy lock and Print from USB lock)

Changing the Language

To change language used on the operator panel:

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 On the **Tools** tab, select **Language Settings**, and then select **Panel Settings**.
- 3 Select the desired language.
- 4 Select **OK**.

Setting the Time for the Power Saver Mode

The printer switches to the power saver mode after the specified time.

See also:

- "Power Saver Mode" on page 35

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab.
- 3 Select **Admin Settings**.
- 4 Select **System Settings**.
- 5 Select **General**, and then select **Power Saver Timer**.
- 6 Select **Low Power Timer** or **Sleep Timer**.
- 7 Enter the desired value using  or , or using the number pad, and then select **OK**.
You can select from 5 – 30 minutes for **Low Power Timer** or 1 – 6 minutes for **Sleep Timer**.
- 8 To return to the previous screen, select  .

About the Concurrent Jobs Feature

This feature enables you to start a concurrent job while a fax job is running. This is performed by temporally displaying the top service menu screen and switching to a different function that can be run concurrently such as copy or scan.

- 1 While the printer is sending or receiving a fax, press the  (**Services Home**) button.
- 2 Select **Copy** or **Scan To**.
- 3 After setting the copy or scan options, press the  (**Start**) button.

For details about **Copy** or **Scan To**, see "Copying" on page 125 or "Scanning" on page 139.

Resetting to Factory Defaults

After executing `Initialize NVM` and rebooting the printer, the menu parameters or data are reset to their factory default values.

NOTE:

- The following procedure does not initialize the network settings.
 - To initialize the network settings, refer to "Reset Network Setup" on page 220.
 - To reset the wireless connection settings, refer to "Reset Wireless" on page 218.

1 Press the  (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab.

3 Select `Admin Settings`.

4 Select `Maintenance`.

5 Select `Initialize NVM`.

6 Select the desired setting.

7 Select `Initialize`.

The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.

Entering Characters

■ Using the Keyboard Displayed on the Touch Panel

During operations, a screen for entering text sometimes appears. The following describes how to enter text.

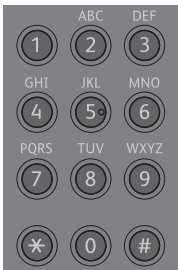


You can enter the following characters: numerals, alphabets, and symbols.

Item	Description
Entering alphabets and numerals	To enter uppercase letters, select . To return to the lowercase letters, select again.
Entering symbols	Select .
Entering a space	Select or (when the language of the text on the touch panel is not English).
Deleting characters	Select to delete one character at a time.

■ Using the Number Pad

As you perform various tasks, you may need to enter numbers. For example, when you specify the quantity of copies or when you enter fax number directly.



Available Characters

You can enter the characters as follows by using the number pad: 0 to 9, * and #.

Changing Numbers

If you make a mistake while entering a number, press the (**Clear All**) button to delete the last digit or character. Then enter the correct number.

Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book

- "Setting Server Address Book and Server Phone Book" on page 259

Setting Server Address Book and Server Phone Book

With server address book and server phone book, you can specify an e-mail address or fax number of a recipient registered in the external LDAP server when sending a scanned image with e-mail or fax.

To use the server address book and server phone book, the printer needs to be configured in order to access the external LDAP server.

NOTE:

- To configure the settings of the external LDAP server, consult your system administrator.
- You must also set **E-mail Server Address Book** and **Fax Server Address Book** to **On** to specify recipients using the server address book and server phone book. For details, see "E-mail Server Address Book" on page 230 and "Fax Server Address Book" on page 230.

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.
The printer's web page appears.

NOTE:

- For details on how to check the IP address of the printer, see "Verifying the IP Settings" on page 59.

- 3 Click **Properties** tab. Click **Authentication System** under **Security**.
- 4 From the **Authentication System Settings** drop-down menu, select **Kerberos** or **LDAP** as the authentication method you are using, and then click **Apply**.
If you select **Kerberos** in this step, go to step 5.
If you select **LDAP** in this step, go to step 7.
- 5 Click **Properties** tab. Click **Kerberos Server** under **Security**.
- 6 Specify the settings under **Kerberos Server**, and then click **Apply**.
- 7 Click **Properties** tab. Click **LDAP Authentication** under **Security**.
- 8 Specify the settings under **LDAP Authentication**, and then click **Apply**.
- 9 Click **Properties** tab. Click **LDAP Server** under **Protocol Settings**.
- 10 Specify the settings under **LDAP Server**, and then click **Apply**.
- 11 Click **Properties** tab. Click **LDAP User Mapping** under **Protocol Settings**.

Specify the attribute names used in the LDAP server. If the attribute names are not customized in the LDAP server, leave the settings in this step as they are by default.

Now the settings are complete. See "Sending an E-mail With the Scanned File" on page 167 or "Sending a Fax Automatically" on page 180 to use the address information in the external server for sending e-mails or faxes.

Digital Certificates

- "Using Digital Certificates" on page 261

Using Digital Certificates

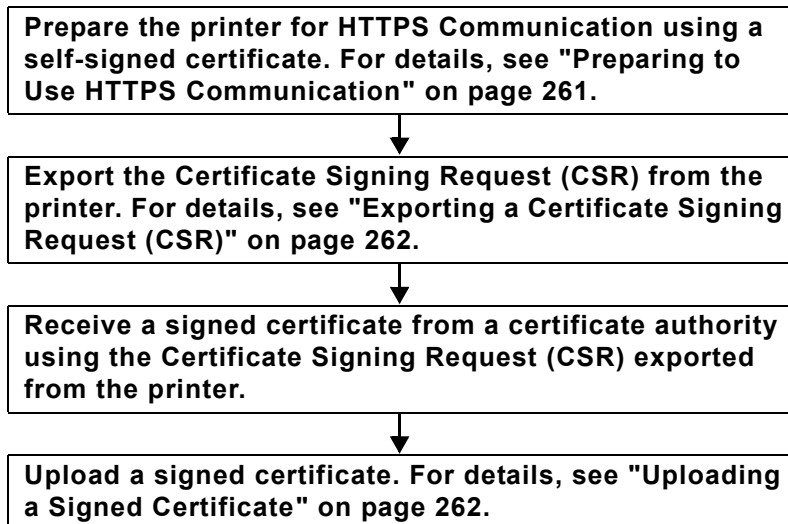
The authentication feature using digital certificates upgrades security when sending print data or setting data. To use digital certificates, set the digital certificate on the printer, and then enable various SSL/TLS communication.

NOTE:

- For information about the digital certificate error, see "Understanding Printer Messages" on page 305 and "Digital Certificate Problems" on page 303.

■ Setting a Digital Certificate

The following is a typical setup flow for setting digital certificates.



Preparing to Use HTTPS Communication

Before managing digital certificates, set HTTPS communication with a self-signed certificate.

- 1 Launch the CentreWare Internet Services by entering IP address of the printer in your web browser.
For more information, see "CentreWare Internet Services" on page 38.
- 2 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 3 Click **SSL/TLS Server Communication** under **Security**.
- 4 Click **Create New Certificate**.
The **Generate Certificate** page is displayed.
- 5 Select the size of the public key from the list of **Public Key Size**.
- 6 Specify the issuer of SSL self-signed certificate.
- 7 Click **Generate Certificate**.
Your request was successfully processed. is displayed.
- 8 Click **Back**.
- 9 Select the **Enabled** check box of **SSL/TLS Server Communication**, and then click **Apply**.
Settings have been changed. Reboot system for new settings to take effect. is displayed.
- 10 Click **Reboot Machine**.

Exporting a Certificate Signing Request (CSR)

NOTE:

- To export a CSR from the printer, **SSL/TLS Server Communication** must be enabled with a self-signed certificate. For details, see "Preparing to Use HTTPS Communication" on page 261.
- If you are going to use a PKCS #12 digital certificate, do not export the CSR. The text box to enter the password when uploading the PKCS #12 digital certificate is displayed only when the CSR is not exported.

- 1 Launch the CentreWare Internet Services by entering IP address of the printer in your web browser.
For more information, see "CentreWare Internet Services" on page 38.
- 2 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 3 Click **SSL/TLS Server Communication** under **Security**.
- 4 Click **Certificate Signing Request (CSR)**.
The **Certificate Signing Request (CSR)** page is displayed.
- 5 Specify each item of the certificate signing request.
- 6 Click **Apply**.
- 7 Confirm the settings of the certificate signing request, and then click **Export**.
- 8 Save a CSR file to your computer.
Use this CSR to receive a signed certificate from a trusted certificate authority.

Uploading a Signed Certificate

After you have received the signed certificate from a trusted certificate authority, upload the signed certificate to the printer. You can also upload a PKCS #12 digital certificate that you created without using the CSR from the machine.

NOTE:

- The maximum number of digital certificates that you can upload is one.
- 1 Launch the CentreWare Internet Services by entering IP address of the printer in your web browser.
For more information, see "CentreWare Internet Services" on page 38.
 - 2 Click the **Properties** tab.
 - 3 Click **SSL/TLS Server Communication** under **Security**.
 - 4 Click **Upload Signed Certificate**.
The **Upload Signed Certificate** page is displayed.
 - 5 When uploading a PKCS #12 digital certificate, enter the password that is set on the digital certificate.

NOTE:

- **Password** is displayed only when the CSR is not exported from the printer.
If you are uploading a digital certificate that you received using the CSR from the printer, proceed to step 7.
- 6 Re-enter the password for confirmation.
 - 7 Click **Choose File** of **File Name**, and select the file to be imported.
 - 8 Click **Import**.

■ Managing the Digital Certificate

NOTE:

- To manage digital certificates, you must have a digital certificate set on the printer. For details, see "Setting a Digital Certificate" on page 261.

Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate

- 1 Launch the CentreWare Internet Services by entering IP address of the printer in your web browser.
For more information, see "CentreWare Internet Services" on page 38.
- 2 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 3 Click **SSL/TLS Server Communication** under **Security**.
- 4 Click **Certificate Management**.
The **Certificate Management** page is displayed.

Deleting a Digital Certificate

- 1 Launch the CentreWare Internet Services by entering IP address of the printer in your web browser.
For more information, see "CentreWare Internet Services" on page 38.
- 2 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 3 Click **SSL/TLS Server Communication** under **Security**.
- 4 To delete both the signed certificate and the self-signed certificate, click **Delete All Certificates**.
To delete just the digital certificate that is currently in use, proceed to step 5.
- 5 Click **Certificate Management**.
The **Certificate Management** page is displayed.
- 6 Click **Delete** at the upper-right corner.
- 7 Click **Delete**.

NOTE:

- When a digital certificate is deleted, the features associated with the deleted digital certificate are disabled. To delete a digital certificate being used, disable the feature in advance or switch the association to another digital certificate, and then switch to another operation mode if possible before deleting the digital certificate.
 - For an SSL Server, switch to another certificate such as a self-signed certificate.
 - For an SSL Client, set the LDAP-SSL/TLS setting to OFF.

■ Setting the SSL/TLS Communication Feature

Setting SSL/TLS Server Communication

Set the SSL/TLS Server Communication to use encrypted communication between HTTP and SMTP servers.

- 1 Launch the CentreWare Internet Services by entering IP address of the printer in your web browser.
For more information, see "CentreWare Internet Services" on page 38.
- 2 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 3 Click **SSL/TLS Server Communication** under **Security**.
- 4 Confirm that the **Enabled** check box of **SSL/TLS Server Communication** is displayed.

NOTE:

- If **Disabled** is displayed instead of a check box, the digital certificate is not set. For details, see "Setting a Digital Certificate" on page 261.

- 5 Select the **Enabled** check box of **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.
- 6 Click **Apply**.
Settings have been changed. Reboot system for new settings to take effect. is displayed.
- 7 Click **Reboot Machine**.
After restarting the printer, communication is encrypted when communicating with HTTP or SMTP.

Setting the LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication

- 1 Launch the CentreWare Internet Services by entering IP address of the printer in your web browser.
For more information, see "CentreWare Internet Services" on page 38.
- 2 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 3 Click **SSL/TLS Server Communication** under **Security**.
- 4 Select the **Enabled** check box of **LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication**.
- 5 Click **Apply**.
Settings have been changed. Reboot system for new settings to take effect. is displayed.
- 6 Click **Reboot Machine**.
After restarting the printer, **LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication** is enabled.

Troubleshooting

- "Clearing Jams" on page 266
- "Basic Printer Problems" on page 276
- "Display Problems" on page 277
- "Printing Problems" on page 278
- "Print Quality Problems" on page 279
- "Copy Problem" on page 289
- "Copy Quality Problems" on page 290
- "Adjusting Color Registration" on page 291
- "Fax Problems" on page 296
- "Scanning Problems" on page 298
- "Scan Driver/Printer Utility Problems" on page 300
- "Wireless Problems" on page 301
- "Wi-Fi Direct Problems" on page 302
- "Digital Certificate Problems" on page 303
- "Other Problem" on page 304
- "Understanding Printer Messages" on page 305
- "Contacting Service" on page 313
- "Getting Help" on page 314
- "Non-Genuine Mode" on page 315

Clearing Jams

Careful selection of appropriate print media and proper loading allow you to avoid most jams.

See also:

- "About Print Media" on page 92
- "Supported Print Media" on page 95

NOTE:

- Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.

■ Avoiding Jams

- Use only recommended print media. For details, see "About Print Media" on page 92.
- See "Loading Print Media in the Standard 150 Sheet Tray" on page 96 to load print media properly.
- Do not overload the print media sources. Make sure that the stacked print media does not exceed the maximum height indicated on the paper width guides.
- Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, or curled print media.
- Flex, fan, and straighten print media before you load it. If a jam occurs with print media, try feeding one sheet at a time through the standard 150 sheet tray.
- Do not use print media that you have cut or trimmed.
- Do not mix print media sizes, weights, or types in the same print media source.
- Make sure that the recommended print side is facing up when you insert the print media.
- Keep print media stored in an acceptable environment. For details, see "Print Media Storage Guidelines" on page 94.
- Make sure that all cables connected to the printer are correctly inserted.
- Overtightening the guides may cause jams.

■ Identifying the Location of Paper Jams



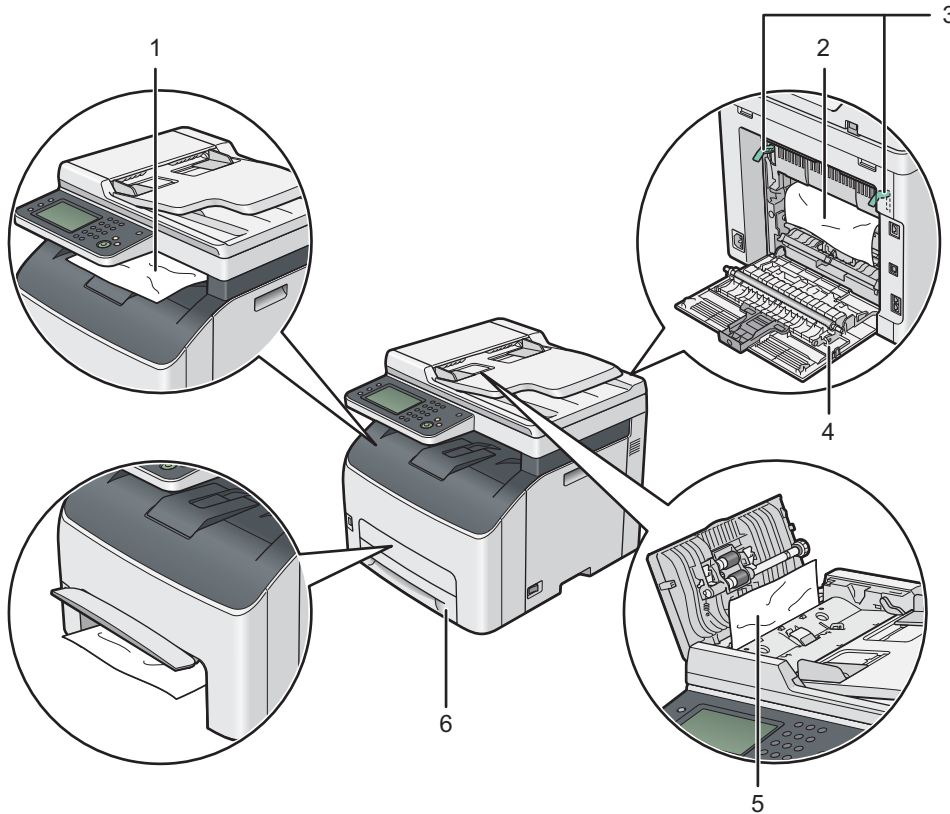
CAUTION:

- Do not attempt to remove a paper deeply jammed inside the product, particularly a paper wrapped around the fusing unit or the heat roller. Otherwise, it may cause injuries or burns. Switch off the product immediately and contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

IMPORTANT:

- Do not attempt to clear any jams using tools or instruments. This may permanently damage the printer.

The following illustration shows where paper jams may occur along the print media path.



- | | |
|---|-------------------------|
| 1 | Center Output Tray |
| 2 | Transfer Belt |
| 3 | Levers |
| 4 | Rear Cover |
| 5 | ADF Cover |
| 6 | Standard 150 Sheet Tray |

■ Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF

When a document jams while it passes through the automatic document feeder (ADF), remove jams in the following procedure.

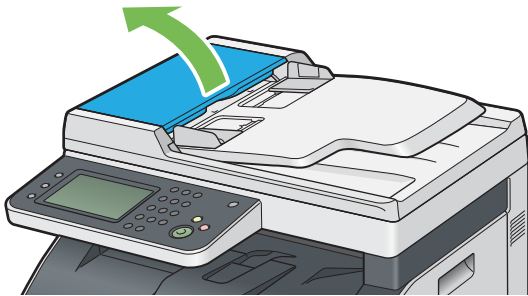
IMPORTANT:

- To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cord from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.
- To avoid burns, do not clear paper jams immediately after printing. The fusing unit becomes extremely hot during use.

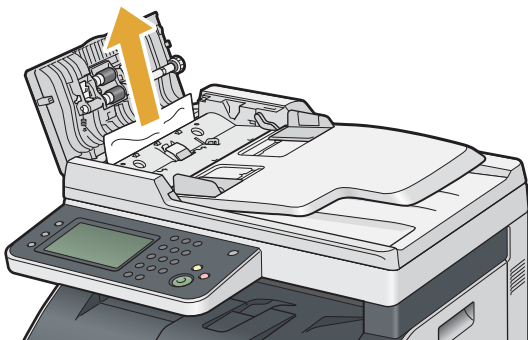
NOTE:

- To resolve the error displayed on the touch panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

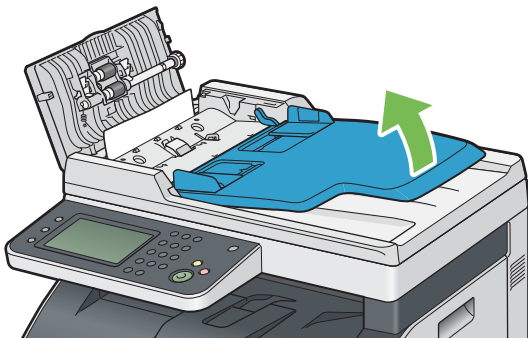
- 1 Open the ADF cover.



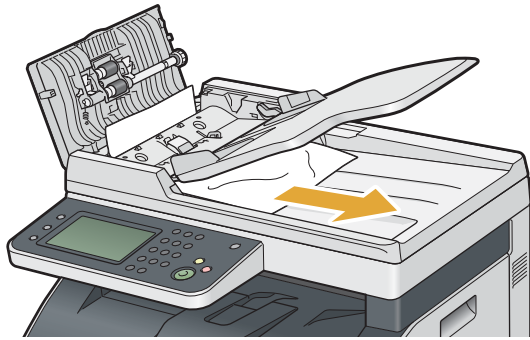
- 2 Remove the jammed document by carefully pulling it in the direction of the arrow shown in the following illustration.



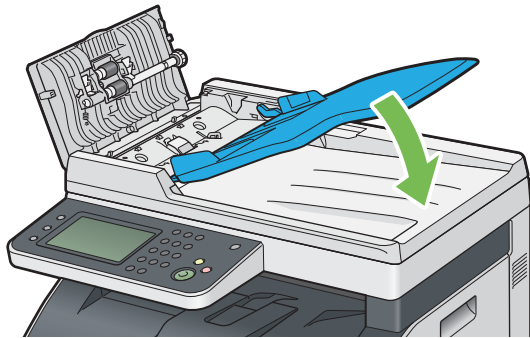
- 3 If you find it difficult to pull the document, open the document feeder tray.



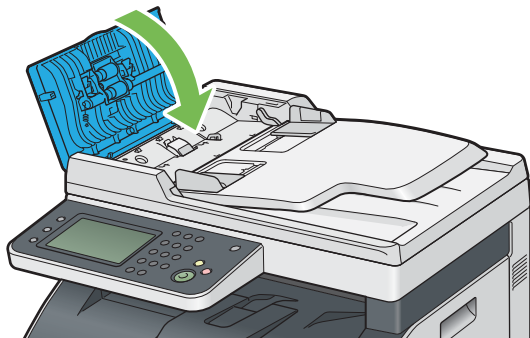
- 4 Remove the jammed document from the document output tray.



- 5 Close the document feeder tray.



- 6 Close the ADF cover, and then load the documents back into the ADF.



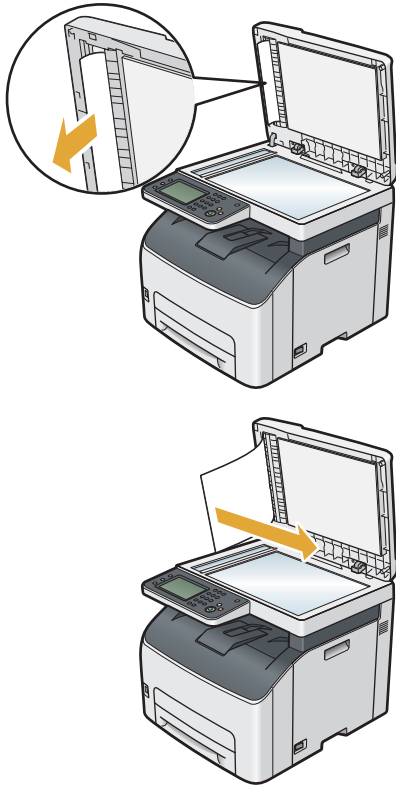
NOTE:

- Make sure that you adjust the document guides before printing a legal-size document.

- 7 If you cannot remove the jammed document from the document output tray or cannot find any jammed document there, open the document cover.



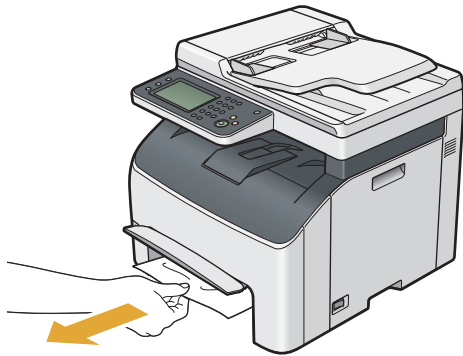
- 8** Remove the document from the ADF feed roller or the feed area by carefully pulling the document in the direction of the arrow shown in the following illustration.



■ Clearing Paper Jams From the Front of the Printer

NOTE:

- To resolve the error displayed on the touch panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.
- 1** Lift up the cover above the standard 150 sheet tray, and remove any paper jammed from the front of the printer.



- 2** Release the cover above the standard 150 sheet tray.

■ Clearing Paper Jams From the Rear of the Printer

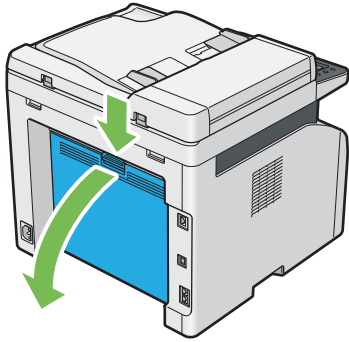
IMPORTANT:

- To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cord from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.
- To avoid burns, do not clear paper jams immediately after printing. The fusing unit becomes extremely hot during use.

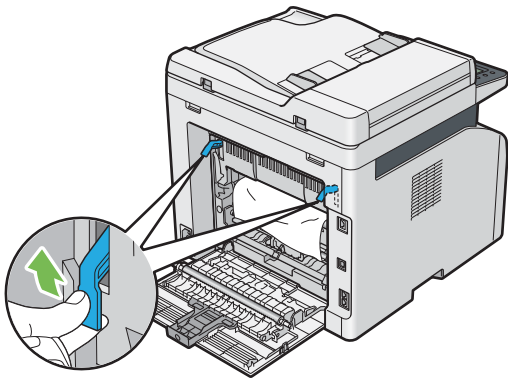
NOTE:

- To resolve the error displayed on the touch panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

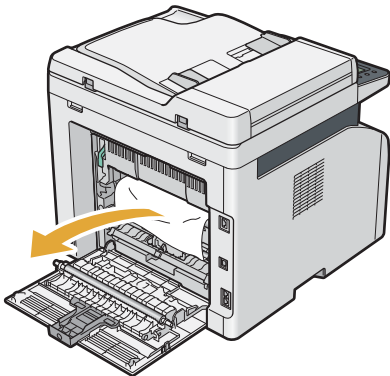
- 1 Push the rear cover handle and open the rear cover.



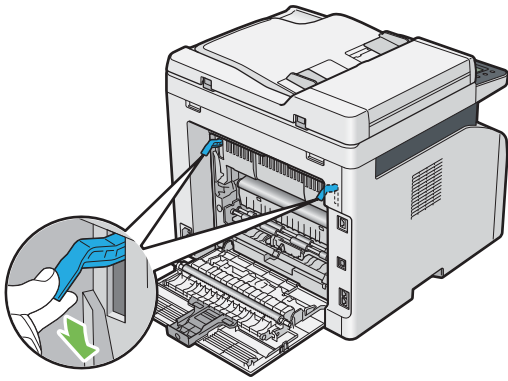
- 2 Lift up the levers.



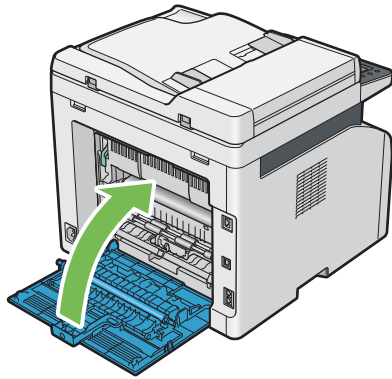
- 3 Remove any paper jammed from the rear of the printer by carefully pulling it in the direction of the arrow shown in the following illustration.



- 4 Lower the levers to their original position.



- 5 Close the rear cover.



■ Clearing Paper Jams From the Center Output Tray

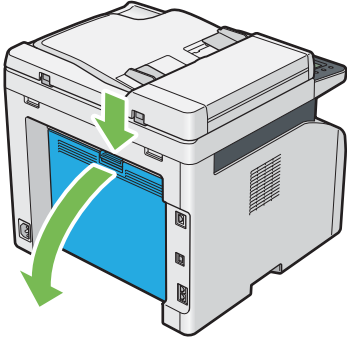
IMPORTANT:

- To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cord from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.
- To avoid burns, do not clear paper jams immediately after printing. The fusing unit becomes extremely hot during use.

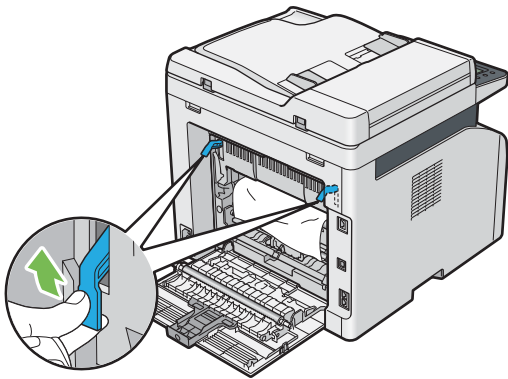
NOTE:

- To resolve the error displayed on the touch panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

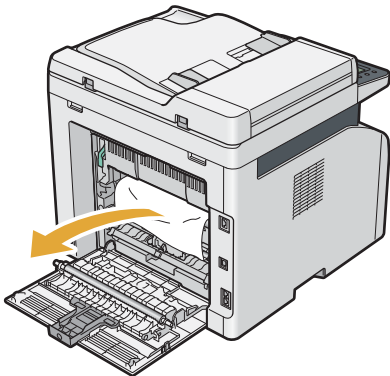
- 1 Push the rear cover handle and open the rear cover.



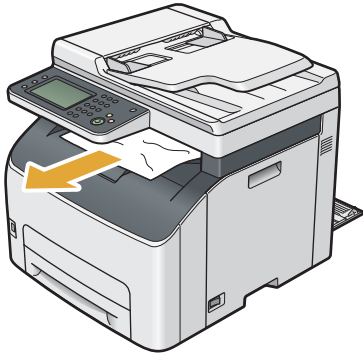
- 2 Lift up the levers.



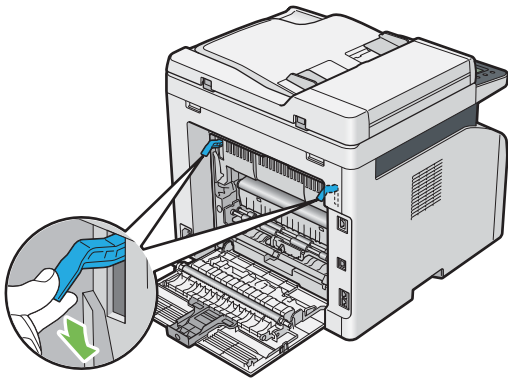
- 3 Remove any paper jammed from the rear of the printer by carefully pulling it in the direction of the arrow shown in the following illustration.



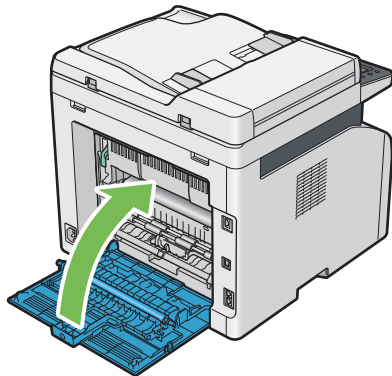
- 4 If no paper is found in the paper path, remove any paper jammed from the center output tray.



- 5 Lower the levers to their original position.



- 6 Close the rear cover.



■ Jam Problems

Misfeed jam

Problem	Action
Print media misfeeds occur.	Make sure that the standard 150 sheet tray is properly inserted. If the problem persists, verify that the correct print media is being used. Depending on the print media you use, take any of the following actions: • For thick paper, use the one that is 163 gsm or less. • For thin paper, use the one that is 60 gsm or more. • For the envelope, make sure that it is properly loaded in the standard 150 sheet tray as instructed in "Loading Envelope in the Standard 150 Sheet Tray" on page 98. If the envelope is deformed, correct it or use another envelope. If performing manual duplex printing, make sure that the print media is not curled. Fan the print media. If the print media is damp, turn over the print media. If the problem continues, use print media that is not damp.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

Multi-feed jam

Problem	Action
Print media multiple feeds occur.	Make sure that the tray or feeder is properly inserted. If the print media is damp, use print media that is not damp. Fan the print media.
A document jam occurs in the ADF if scanning of multiple-sheet document is canceled while scanning is in progress.	Clear the jam. See also: • "Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF" on page 268

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

Basic Printer Problems

Some printer problems can be easy to resolve. If a problem occurs with your printer, check each of the following:

- The power cord is connected to the printer, and to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- The printer is turned on.
- The electrical outlet is not turned off at any switch or breaker.
- Other electrical equipment plugged into the outlet is working.
- When your printer is connected to the computer with the wireless connection, the Ethernet cable is not connected between the printer and the network.

If you have checked all of the above and still have a problem, turn off the printer, wait for 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer. This often fixes the problem.

NOTE:

- If error messages are displayed on the touch panel or on your computer screen, follow the on-screen instructions to resolve the printer problems. For details about error messages and error codes, see "Understanding Printer Messages" on page 305.

Display Problems

Problem	Action
Menu settings changed from the operator panel have no effect.	Settings in the print driver, or printer utilities have precedence over the settings made on the operator panel. Change the menu settings from the print driver or printer utilities instead of the operator panel.

Printing Problems

Problem	Action
Job did not print or incorrect characters printed.	Confirm that the top service menu screen appears on the touch panel before you send a job to print. Press the  (Services Home) button to return to the top service menu screen.
	Make sure that print media is loaded in the printer.
	Verify that you are using the correct print driver.
	If you are using wireless connection, make sure that the wireless connection is established.
	If you are using USB connection, make sure that you are using the correct USB cable and that it is securely connected to the printer.
	Verify that the correct print media size is selected.
	If you are using a print spooler, verify that the spooler has not stalled.
	Check the interface of your printer from Admin Settings . Determine the host interface you are using. Print a System Settings page to verify that the current interface settings are correct. See "Printing a System Settings Page" on page 122 for details on how to print a System Settings page.
Print media misfeeds or multiple feeds occur.	Make sure that the print media you are using meets the specifications for your printer.
	See also:
	"Usable Print Media" on page 95
	Fan the print media before loading it.
	Make sure that the print media is loaded correctly.
	Make sure that the paper width guides and length guide are adjusted correctly.
	Make sure that the standard 150 sheet tray is securely inserted.
	Do not overload the print media sources.
	Do not force print media into the standard 150 sheet tray when you load it. Otherwise, it may skew or buckle.
	Make sure that the print media is not curled.
	Load the recommended print side correctly for the type of print media you are using.
	See also:
	"Loading Print Media" on page 96
	Turn the print media over or around and try printing again to see if feeding improves.
	Do not mix print media types.
	Do not mix print media sizes.
	Remove the top and bottom curled sheets of a ream before loading the print media.
	Load the print media source only when it is empty.
The envelope is creased after printing.	Make sure that the envelope is loaded as instructed in "Loading Envelope in the Standard 150 Sheet Tray" on page 98.
Page breaks in unexpected places.	Increase the value for Job Timeout in the System Settings menu, that is on the Printer Maintenance tab in the Printer Setting Utility.
	Increase the time-out value for the protocol in use in the Protocol Settings menu on the CentreWare Internet Services.
Printer does not print duplex pages.	Select either of the duplex printing options (flip on short edge/flip on long edge) in the print driver.
	See also:
	"Manual Duplex Printing" on page 100

Print Quality Problems

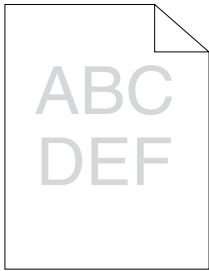
NOTE:

- In this section, some procedures use the Printer Setting Utility or the SimpleMonitor. Some procedures that use the Printer Setting Utility can also be performed using the operator panel.

See also:

- "Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 206
- "Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)" on page 39
- "SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)" on page 40

■ The Output Is Too Light

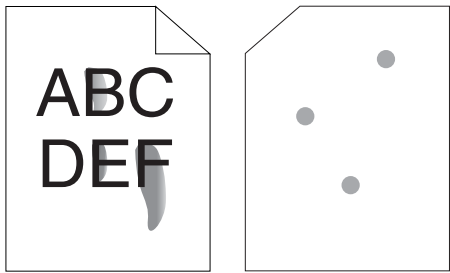


Problem	Action
The output is too light.	The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner in each toner cartridge.
	1 Check the toner level in the Status tab in the Printer Status window of the SimpleMonitor.
	2 Replace the toner cartridges as necessary.
	Verify that the print media is dry and the correct print media is used.
	If not, use the print media recommended for the printer.
	See also: • "Usable Print Media" on page 95
	Try changing the paper type setting in the print driver. The following procedure uses the Microsoft® Windows® print driver as an example.
	1 On the Paper/Output tab in Printing Preferences of the print driver, change the Paper Type setting.
	2 Load dry (not damp) and correct size print media, and then click Print Test Page in the Properties window of the print driver.
	Disable the toner saving feature in the print driver.
	See also: • "Conserving Supplies" on page 333

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Toner Smears or Print Comes Off/Stain on Back Side

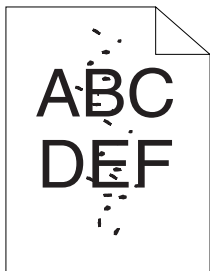


Problem	Action
Toner smears or print comes off. The output has stain on the back side.	The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the paper type setting in the print driver. For example, change Plain to Lightweight Cardstock. The following procedure uses the Windows print driver as an example. 1 On the Paper/Output tab in Printing Preferences of the print driver, change the Paper Type setting. Verify that the correct print media is being used. If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. See also: • "Usable Print Media" on page 95 Adjust the temperature of the fusing unit. 1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Adjust Fusing Unit on the Printer Maintenance tab. 2 Adjust the fixing temperature by turning up the value for your printing media. 3 Click Apply New Settings.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Random Spots/Blurred Images

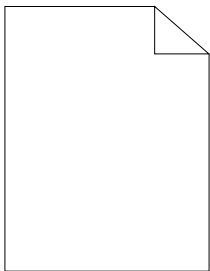


Problem	Action
The printed result has random spots or is blurred.	Make sure that the toner cartridges are installed correctly. See also: • "Installing a Toner Cartridge" on page 327 If you use non-genuine brand toner cartridges, install genuine brand toner cartridges. Clean up the fusing unit. 1 Load one sheet of paper on the standard 150 sheet tray and then print a solid image all over paper. 2 Load the printed sheet with the printed side facing down, and then print a blank sheet of paper.

NOTE:

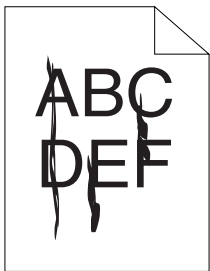
- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ The Entire Output Is Blank



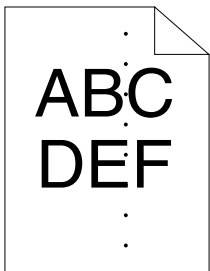
If this trouble happens, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Streaks Appear on the Output



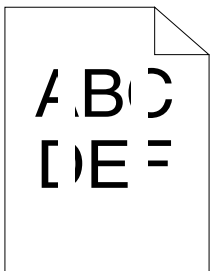
If this trouble happens, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Pitched Color Dots



If this trouble happens, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Vertical Blanks



Problem	Action
The printed result has vertical blanks.	Clean inside the printer and perform a test print. 1 Clean inside the printer by using the print head cleaning rod. 2 Click Print Test Page in the Properties window of the print driver. See also: "Cleaning Inside the Printer" on page 320

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

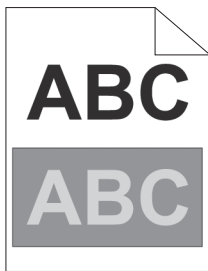
■ Mottle

Problem	Action
The printed result has mottled appearance.	Adjust the transfer bias. 1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Adjust BTR on the Printer Maintenance tab. 2 Adjust the setting for the type of print media being used. 3 Click Apply New Settings. If you use non-recommended print media, use the print media recommended for the printer.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Ghosting



Problem	Action
The printed result has ghosting.	Adjust the transfer bias. 1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Chart Print on the Diagnosis tab. 2 Click Ghost Configuration Chart. The Ghost Configuration Chart is printed. 3 Click BTR Refresh Mode on the Printer Maintenance tab. 4 Select the check box next to On, and then click Apply New Settings. 5 Click Chart Print on the Diagnosis tab. 6 Click Ghost Configuration Chart. The Ghost Configuration Chart is printed. The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the paper type setting in the print driver. For example, change Plain to Lightweight Cardstock. The following procedure uses the Windows print driver as an example. 1 On the Paper/Output tab in Printing Preferences of the print driver, change the Paper Type setting. Adjust the temperature of the fusing unit. 1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Adjust Fusing Unit on the Printer Maintenance tab. 2 Adjust the fixing temperature by turning up the value for your printing media. 3 Click Apply New Settings. If you use non-recommended print media, use the print media recommended for the printer.

NOTE:

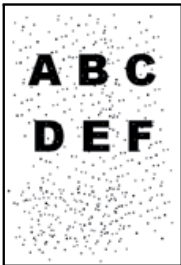
- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Fog



Problem	Action
The entire page is foggy.	Contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
Part of the page is foggy.	Start Clean Developer. 1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Clean Developer on the Diagnosis tab. 2 Click Start. If the problem continues even after performing Clean Developer, start Refresh Mode. 1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Refresh Mode on the Diagnosis tab. 2 Select the color that is the same as the fog. If the problem continues even after performing Refresh Mode, start Refresh Mode again. NOTE: • If the problem continues even after performing Refresh Mode twice, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Bead-Carry-Out (BCO)

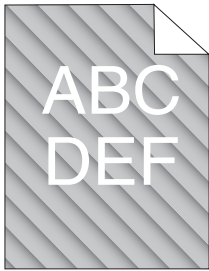


Problem	Action
Bead-Carry-Out (BCO) is happening.	If the printer is installed in a high altitude location, set the altitude of the location. 1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Adjust Altitude on the Printer Maintenance tab. 2 Select the value close to the altitude of the location where the printer is installed. 3 Click Apply New Settings.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Auger Mark

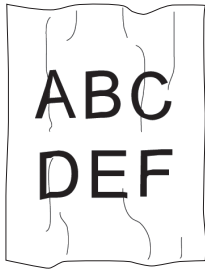


Problem	Action
The printed result has auger mark.	The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner in each toner cartridge. 1 Check the toner level in the Status tab in the Printer Status window of the SimpleMonitor. 2 Replace the toner cartridges as necessary.
	Start Clean Developer. 1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Clean Developer on the Diagnosis tab. 2 Click Start.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Wrinkled/Stained Paper

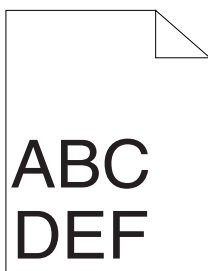


Problem	Action
The output is wrinkled. The output is stained.	Verify that the correct print media is being used. If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. If excessive wrinkles occur, use paper or other media from a new package. See also: • "Usable Print Media" on page 95 • "About Print Media" on page 92
	If you use the envelope, check whether the crease is within 30 mm of the four edges of the envelope. If the crease is within 30 mm of the four edges of the envelope, this is considered normal. Your printer is not at fault. If not, take the following actions: • If the envelope is Com 10, which is 220 mm or longer and has a flap on the long edge, use a different size envelope. • If the envelope is C5, which is 220 mm or longer and has a flap on the short edge, load it in the standard 150 sheet tray with the flap open and facing up. • If the envelope is Monarch or DL, which is shorter than 220 mm, load it long edge feed in the standard 150 sheet tray with the flap open and facing up. If the problem continues, use a different size envelope.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ The Top Margin Is Incorrect

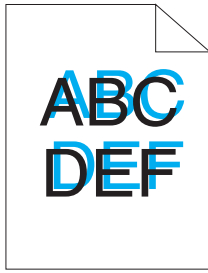


Problem	Action
The top margin is incorrect.	Make sure that the margins are set correctly on the application being used.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Color Registration Is Out of Alignment

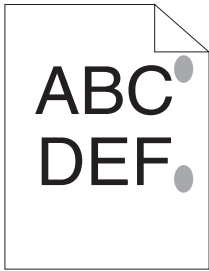


Problem	Action
Color registration is out of alignment.	Execute an auto color registration adjustment. 1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Registration Adjustment on the Printer Maintenance tab. 2 Deselect the check box next to On. 3 Click Start next to Auto Correct. Clean the CTD sensor. 1 Clean the CTD sensor. 2 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Registration Adjustment on the Printer Maintenance tab. 3 Deselect the check box next to On. 4 Click Start next to Auto Correct. See also: • "Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor" on page 323 Print the color registration chart and manually correct the color registration. 1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Registration Adjustment on the Printer Maintenance tab. 2 Deselect the check box next to On. 3 Click Start next to Print Color Regi Chart. The color registration chart is printed. 4 Check the values with the straight lines on the chart. 5 Select the value for each color on the Printer Setting Utility. 6 Click Apply New Settings. 7 Click Start next to Print Color Regi Chart to print the color registration chart again. 8 Adjust until all straight lines are at the value of 0. See also: • "Adjusting Color Registration" on page 291

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Protrudent/Bumpy Paper



Problem	Action
Printed surface got protrudent/bumpy.	Clean up the fusing unit. 1 Load one sheet of paper on the standard 150 sheet tray, and then print a solid image all over the paper. 2 Load the printed sheet with the printed side facing down, and then print a blank sheet of paper.

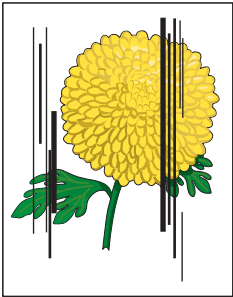
NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

Copy Problem

Problem	Action
A document loaded in the ADF cannot be copied.	Make sure that the ADF cover is firmly closed.

Copy Quality Problems

Problem	Action
There are lines or streaks in copies made from the ADF. 	There is debris on the ADF glass. When scanning, the paper from the ADF passes over the debris creating lines or streaks. Clean the ADF glass with a lint free cloth. See also: • "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 317
There are spots in copies taken from the document glass.	There is debris on the document glass. When scanning, the debris creates a spot on the image. Clean the document glass with a lint free cloth. See also: • "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 317
The reverse side of the original is showing on the copy.	On the Copy menu, enable <code>Auto Background Suppression</code>. For information on turning <code>Auto Background Suppression</code> on and off, see "Auto Background Suppression" on page 132.
Light colors are washed out or white on the copy.	On the Copy menu, disable <code>Auto Background Suppression</code>. For information on turning <code>Auto Background Suppression</code> on and off, see "Auto Background Suppression" on page 132.
Image is too light or dark.	Use the <code>Lighten / Darken</code> option on the Copy menu. For information on making the image lighter or darker, see "Lighten / Darken" on page 131.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

Adjusting Color Registration

This section describes how to adjust the color registration when you first install the printer or after moving it to a new location.

■ Performing Auto Correct

Auto Correct allows you to correct the color registration automatically.

Using the Operator Panel

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab.
- 3 Select **Admin Settings**.
- 4 Select **Maintenance**.
- 5 Select **Color Registration**.
- 6 Select **Auto Registration**.
- 7 Select **Start**.
Auto correct is performed.

Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility opens.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **Registration Adjustment** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **Registration Adjustment** page is displayed.
- 4 Deselect the check box next to **On**.
- 5 Click **Start** next to **Auto Correct**.
The color registration is corrected automatically.

■ Printing the Color Registration Chart

Using the Operator Panel

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab.
- 3 Select **Admin Settings**.
- 4 Select **Maintenance**.
- 5 Select **Color Registration**.
- 6 Select **Print Registration Chart**.
- 7 Select **Print**.

The color registration chart is printed.

Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility opens.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **Registration Adjustment** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **Registration Adjustment** page is displayed.
- 4 Deselect the check box next to **On**.
- 5 Click **Start** next to **Print Color Regi Chart**.

The color registration chart is printed.

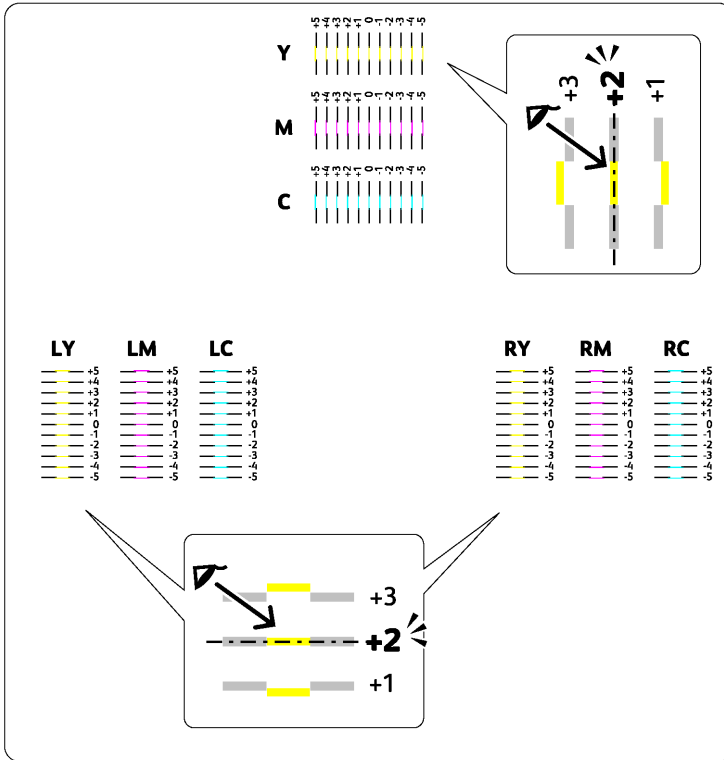
■ Determining Values

On the color registration chart printed, find the straightest lines where the two black lines and the colored line are most closely aligned for each color (Y, M, and C).

If you find the straightest line, make a note of the value (-5 – +5) indicated by the straightest line for each color.

When the value is 0 for each color, you do not need to adjust the color registration.

When the value is not 0, enter the value according to the procedure in "Entering Values" on page 294.



■ Entering Values

Using the Operator Panel

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab.
- 3 Select **Admin Settings**.
- 4 Select **Maintenance**.
- 5 Select **Color Registration**.
- 6 Select **Enter Registration Values**.
- 7 Confirm that **LY**, **LM**, and **LC** appear.
- 8 Select **+** or **-** to specify the values for **LY**, **LM**, and **LC**.
- 9 Select **Next**.
- 10 Confirm that **RY**, **RM**, and **RC** appear.
- 11 Select **+** or **-** to specify the values for **RY**, **RM**, and **RC**.
- 12 Select **Next**.
- 13 Confirm that **Y**, **M**, and **C** appear.
- 14 Select **+** or **-** to specify the values for **Y**, **M**, and **C**.
- 15 Select **OK**.

NOTE:

- The registration values are always shown as 0 the next time you enter the menu.

- 16 Select **Print Registration Chart**.
- 17 Select **Print**.

The color registration chart is printed with the new values.

If the straightest line is not at the value of 0, adjust the values again. Checking the charts before and after the adjustments will help you to determine the values to enter.

IMPORTANT:

- After printing the color registration chart, do not turn off the printer until the printer motor has stopped running.

Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

Enter the values that you found in the color registration chart to make adjustments.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility opens.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **Registration Adjustment** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **Registration Adjustment** page is displayed.
- 4 Deselect the check box next to **On**.
- 5 Select the value you checked in the color registration chart, and then click **Apply New Settings**.
- 6 Click **Start** next to **Print Color Regi Chart**.
The color registration chart is printed with the new values.
- 7 Adjust until all straight lines are at the value of 0.
Viewing the images before and after will help.

IMPORTANT:

- After printing the color registration chart, do not turn off the printer until the printer motor has stopped running.

Fax Problems

Problem	Action
The printer is not working, there is no display and the buttons are not working.	Unplug the power cord and plug it in again. Make sure that there is power to the electrical receptacle.
No dial tone sounds.	Check that the phone line is connected properly. See also: • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 172 Check that the phone socket in the wall is working by plugging in another phone.
The numbers stored in the memory do not dial correctly.	Make sure that the numbers are stored in the memory correctly. Print the Address Book List.
The document does not feed into the printer.	Make sure that the document is not wrinkled and you are putting it in correctly. Check that the document is of the right size, not too thick or thin. Make sure that the ADF cover is firmly closed.
Faxes are not received automatically.	Select FAX Mode for Receive Mode . Make sure that there is paper in the standard 150 sheet tray.. Check if the touch panel shows Memory Full . Check the Junk Fax Filter setting.
The printer does not send faxes.	Check the other fax machine you are sending to, to see if it can receive your fax.
The incoming fax has blank spaces or is received in poor-quality.	The fax machine sending you the fax may be faulty. Ask the sender to sort out the problem and resend the fax. A noisy phone line can cause line errors. Ask the sender to resend the fax. Check your printer by making a copy. The toner cartridge may be empty. Replace the toner cartridge. See also: • "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 324
Some of the words on an incoming fax are stretched.	The fax machine sending you the fax had a temporary document jam. Ask the sender to clear the document jam and resend the fax.
There are lines on the documents you send.	Check your ADF glass for marks and clean it. See also: • "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 317
The printer dials a number, but the connection with another fax machine fails.	The other fax machine may be turned off, out of paper, or cannot answer incoming calls. Ask the sender to sort out the problem and retry.
Documents are not stored in the memory.	There may not be enough memory to store the document. If the touch panel shows Memory Full , delete any documents you no longer need from the memory and then restore the document, or wait for the job in progress (e.g., a fax transmission or reception) to complete.
Blank areas appear at the bottom of each page or on other pages, with a small strip of text at the top.	You may have chosen the wrong paper settings in the user option setting. Correct the paper settings. See also: • "Paper Tray Settings" on page 247

Problem	Action
The printer will not send or receive faxes.	Check if the region is set correctly. 1 Press the  (System) button. 2 Select the Tools tab. 3 Select Admin Settings. 4 Select Fax Settings. 5 Select Fax Line Settings. 6 Select Region. 7 Select the correct region, and then select OK. Check that the phone line is connected properly. See also: • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 172
An error often occurs during a fax transmission or reception.	Reduce the modem speed. 1 Press the  (System) button. 2 Select the Tools tab. 3 Select Admin Settings. 4 Select Fax Settings. 5 Select Transmission Defaults. 6 Select Modem Speed. 7 Select the desired menu item, and then select OK.

Scanning Problems

Problem	Action
The scanner does not work.	Make sure that you place the document to be scanned facing down on the document glass, or facing up in the ADF.
	There may not be enough available memory to hold the document you want to scan. Try the Preview function to see if that works. Try lowering the scan resolution rate.
	Check that the Ethernet or USB cable is connected properly.
	Make sure that the Ethernet or USB cable is not defective. Switch the cable with a known good cable. If necessary, replace the cable.
	Check that the scanner is configured correctly. Check the application you want to use to make certain that the scanner job is being sent to the correct port.
The printer scans very slowly.	Graphics are scanned more slowly than text when using the Scan to E-Mail or Scan to Network feature.
	Communication speed becomes slow in scan mode because of the large amount of memory required to analyze and reproduce the scanned image.
	Scanning images at a high resolution takes more time than scanning at a low resolution.
Document misfeeds or multiple feeds occur in the ADF.	Make sure that the document's paper type meets the specifications for the printer.
	See also:
	• "Preparing a Document" on page 127 • "Making Copies From the ADF" on page 130
	Check if the document is properly loaded in the ADF.
	Make sure that the document guides are adjusted properly.
	Make sure that the number of document sheets do not exceed the maximum capacity of the ADF.
	Make sure that the document is not curled.
Vertical stripes appear on the output when scanned using the ADF.	Fan the document well before loading it in the ADF.
	Clean the ADF glass.
	See also:
A smear appears at the same location on the output when scanned using the document glass.	• "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 317
	Clean the document glass.
Images are skewed.	See also:
	• "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 317
Images are skewed.	Make sure that the document is loaded straight in the ADF or on the document glass.
Diagonal lines appear jagged when scanned using the ADF.	If the document uses thick media, try scanning it from the document glass.

Problem	Action
The printer does not properly transfer scan data to a specified destination via the Scan to E-Mail or Scan to Network feature.	Check if the following settings have been set correctly on the CentreWare Internet Services. Scan to E-Mail Check the following setting under Address Book → Personal Address: • Name • Phone number • E-mail Address Scan to Network Check the following settings under Address Book → Computer/Server Address Book: • Name (Displayed on Printer) • Network Type • Host Address (IP Address or DNS Name) • Port Number • Login Name (if required by host) • Login Password • Name of Shared Directory • Subdirectory Path (optional)
Cannot scan using Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) on a Windows Server® 2003 computer.	Enable Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) on the computer. To enable Windows Image Acquisition (WIA): 1 Click Start, point to Administrative Tools, and then click Services. 2 Right-click Windows Image Acquisition (WIA), and then click Properties to make sure that Startup type is set to Manual or Automatic. 3 Click OK. 4 Right-click Windows Image Acquisition (WIA), and then click Start.
Cannot scan using TWAIN or Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) on a Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, or Windows Server 2012 R2 computer.	Install the Desktop Experience feature on the computer. To install Desktop Experience: For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 R2: 1 Click Start, point to Administrative Tools, and then click Server Manager. 2 Click Add Features under Features Summary. 3 Select the Desktop Experience check box. 4 If a window appears, follow the on-screen instructions. 5 Click Next, and then click Install. 6 Restart the computer. For Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2: 1 On the Start screen, click Server Manager. 2 Click Add roles and features to start Add Roles and Features Wizard. 3 On the Before you begin screen, click Next. 4 On the Select installation type screen, confirm that Role-based or feature-based installation is selected, and then click Next. 5 On the Select destination server screen, select an appropriate server and then click Next. 6 On the Select server roles screen, click Next. 7 On the Select features screen, select the Desktop Experience check box under User Interfaces and Infrastructure (Installed) in the Features list. 8 On the pop-up window, click Add Features. 9 On the Select features screen, click Next. 10 On the Confirm installation selections screen, click Install. 11 Restart the computer.

Scan Driver/Printer Utility Problems

Problem	Action
Unable to retrieve the Address Book data from the printer on the Address Book Editor.	Make sure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the USB cable or Ethernet cable.
	Make sure that the printer is turned on.
	Make sure that the print driver is installed on your computer. (The Address Book Editor retrieves the Address Book data via the print driver.)
The TWAIN driver cannot connect to the printer.	Make sure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the USB cable.
	Check if the printer is turned on. If the printer is turned on, reboot it by turning the power switch off and then on again.
	If a scan application is running, close the application once, restart the application, and then try scanning again.
The scan driver has not been registered on your computer and cannot be accessed from the Express Scan Manager.	Install the scan driver. If the driver is already installed, uninstall it and then reinstall it.
Failed to scan your document on the printer via the Express Scan Manager.	Make sure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the USB cable.
	Check if the printer is turned on. If the printer is turned on, reboot it by turning the power switch off and then on again.
	If a scan application is running, close the application once, restart the application, and then try scanning again.
Failed to create an image file via the Express Scan Manager.	Uninstall the Express Scan Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.
Failed to initialize the Express Scan Manager.	Uninstall the Express Scan Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.
Failed to execute the Express Scan Manager.	Uninstall the Express Scan Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.
An unexpected error occurred on the Express Scan Manager.	Uninstall the Express Scan Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.

Wireless Problems

Problem	Action
Cannot setup wireless connection.	Make sure that the Ethernet cable is disconnected from the printer. Try disabling the firewall on your computer. The firewall on your computer may be blocking communication with your printer.
Cannot setup wireless connection with WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup™).	Make sure that the security setting of the wireless LAN access point or router is WPA™ (Wi-Fi Protected Access®) or WPA2™. (WEP is not supported on WPS.)
Cannot setup wireless connection with the WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration).	Press the WPS button on the wireless LAN access point or router within two minutes after starting the WPS operation on the printer. For details about the wireless LAN access point or router, refer to the manual supplied with the wireless LAN access point or router.
Cannot setup wireless connection with WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number).	Check if the PIN you have entered on the computer is correct.
Cannot connect to the wireless network after setting up wireless connection.	Check if the passphrase for WPA/WPA2 encryption or WEP key set on the wireless LAN access point or router has been changed. (Passphrase may be described as key on some access points or routers.) For details about the wireless LAN access point or router, refer to the manual supplied with the wireless LAN access point or router.

Wi-Fi Direct Problems

Problem	Action
The device cannot discover the printer.	The printer may be connected to another device via Wi-Fi Direct®. Disconnect the printer and the device. For details, see "Disconnecting Wi-Fi Direct Network" on page 118.
The printer cannot disconnect from the device even when the procedure in "Disconnecting Wi-Fi Direct Network" has been performed.	The device may be automatically reconnecting to the printer. Reset the passphrase for Wi-Fi Direct and disconnect the device. For details, see "Resetting the Passphrase" on page 118.
The network mode of the printer cannot be set to Ad-Hoc mode on the CentreWare Internet Services.	Make sure that Wi-Fi Direct is set to Disable.
Wi-Fi Direct cannot be set to Enable.	Make sure that the network mode is set to Infrastructure mode on the CentreWare Internet Services.

Digital Certificate Problems

Problem	Action
The Certificate Signing Request (CSR) / Upload Signed Certificate is not displayed.	Create a self-signed certificate and enable SSL/TLS Server Communication . For details, see "Preparing to Use HTTPS Communication" on page 261.
The digital certificate cannot be uploaded.	Confirm validity period of the digital certificate as well as the time setting of the device.
	Confirm that the password is correct.
	Confirm that the file type is PKCS #7/#12 or x509CACert (extension: p7b/p12/pfx/cer/crt).
	Confirm that the attribute information (Key usage/Extended key usage) of the digital certificate to be imported is set correctly.
Although a digital certificate was uploaded, it is not displayed.	Use Internet Explorer®.
	To upload a digital certificate for use with the device (own device), import the secret key and a digital certificate of the PKCS #12 (p12/pfx) format as a pair.
Server validation is not operating correctly.	Although uploading a root certificate (Trusted) to use for server authentication, an intermediate certificate may be required when validating the path.
	When executing a digital certificate file with the certification authority, create the digital certificate with a format including all paths and then import that digital certificate.

Other Problem

Problem	Action
Condensation has occurred inside the printer.	This usually occurs within several hours after you heat the room in winter. This also occurs when the printer is operating in a location where relative humidity reaches 85% or more. Adjust the humidity or relocate the printer to an appropriate environment.

Understanding Printer Messages

The printer touch panel displays messages describing the current state of the printer and indicates possible printer problems you must resolve. This section describes error codes included in the messages, their meanings, and how to clear the messages.

IMPORTANT:

- When an error message is displayed, the print data remaining on the printer and the information accumulated in the memory of the printer are not secured.

Error Code	What You Can Do
005-121	Open the ADF cover. Remove the jammed paper and then close the ADF cover.
005-301	See also: "Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF" on page 268
009-950	Replace the specified toner cartridge.
009-951	See also:
009-952	"Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 324
009-953	
010-397	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
016-315	
016-317	See also:
016-372	"Online Services" on page 339
016-501	
016-502	
016-503	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the SMTP server setting is correct by contacting your server administrator.
016-504	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the user name and password for the POP3 server are set correctly by contacting your server administrator.
016-506	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the SMTP server address and e-mail destination are set correctly.
016-507	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the user name and password used for the SMTP server are set correctly by contacting your server administrator.
016-718	Select OK to clear the message. Retry when the printer does not process any job.
016-719	Select OK to cancel the current job. Retry when the printer does not process any job.
016-720	
016-744	Select OK to clear the message. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
016-745	See also: "Online Services" on page 339
016-749	Select OK to cancel the current job. Retry when the printer does not process any job.
016-753	PDL emulation error has occurred. Select OK to clear the message and cancel the current print job.
016-755	Check if the password is correct.
016-764	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the Ethernet cable is properly connected. If this does not solve the problem, contact SMTP server administrator.
016-766	Select OK to clear the message. Ping the IP address of the SMTP server and check if the server is available. If this does not solve the problem, contact SMTP server administrator.
016-767	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the recipient address is correct, and try scanning again.
016-791	Insert the USB storage device and select OK to clear the message.
016-795	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the file format is correct.
016-797	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the USB storage device is securely connected.
016-920	Select OK to clear the message. Check the wireless setting for the access point and the printer, and try wireless settings again.
016-921	

Error Code	What You Can Do
016-930	Remove the device from the USB drive and select OK to clear the message.
016-931	
016-981	Select OK to cancel the current job. Try copying fewer documents.
016-982	The printer memory is full and cannot continue processing the current print job. Select OK to clear the message and cancel the current print job.
016-985	Attached file size is larger than you defined. Select OK to clear the message. Try the following: • Enlarge Max E-Mail Size. • Lower the resolution setting. • Change the file format of the scanned image.
017-970	Memory is likely to be full. Select OK to clear the message. Try the following: • Delete the data stored in the memory. • Lower the resolution setting. • Reduce the number of pages.
017-980	Select OK to clear the message. Retry when the printer does not process any job.
017-981	
017-988	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the interface cable is securely connected or your computer does not have any problem.
018-338	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer. See also: • "Online Services" on page 339
024-340	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
024-360	
024-371	See also: • "Online Services" on page 339
024-946	Select OK to clear the message. Check for any misfed paper in the standard 150 sheet tray, and set the tray to the printer.
024-958	Load the specified paper and select OK to clear the message. See also: • "Loading Print Media in the Standard 150 Sheet Tray" on page 96
024-963	Select OK to clear the message and load the specified paper. Follow the on-screen instruction if one appears. See also: • "Loading Print Media in the Standard 150 Sheet Tray" on page 96
026-720	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the USB storage device has enough memory.
026-721	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the USB storage device is write-protected or gets any disk problem.
026-722	
026-723	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the path and file name to save the data is too long.
026-750	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the interface cable is securely connected, or restart the application you use.
026-751	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the interface cable is securely connected.
026-752	
031-521	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the access setting to the SMB server is correct by contacting your server administrator.
031-526	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the domain name of the SMB server is correct. Check DNS connection, or check if the name of the forwarding destination server is registered with DNS.
031-529	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the Ethernet cable is properly connected and if the password for the SMB server is correct.
031-530	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the working path setting to the SMB server is correct.

Error Code	What You Can Do
031-533	Select OK to clear the message. Check the following: • If the file name you specified is not used by other users. • If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists. • If the SMB server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-534	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the SMB server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-535	
031-536	
031-537	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the storage location has free space.
031-555	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the network is properly connected.
031-556	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the SMB server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-557	Select OK to clear the message. Check the following: • If the file name you specified is not used by other users. • If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.
031-558	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the access setting to the SMB server is correct by contacting your server administrator.
031-571	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the printer is properly connected to a network.
031-574	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the domain name of the FTP server is correct.
031-575	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the host name setting to the FTP server is correct.
031-576	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the FTP server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-578	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the Ethernet cable is properly connected and if login name (user name) and password for the FTP server are correct.
031-579	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the working path setting to the FTP server is correct.
031-582	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the FTP server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-584	Select OK to clear the message. Check the following: • If the file name you specified is not used by other users. • If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists. • If the FTP server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-585	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the FTP server encounters any delete/write-protection or disk problem.
031-587	
031-588	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the FTP server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-589	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the storage location has free space.
031-594	Select OK to clear the message. Contact your server administrator to check if the scanned file has wrong setting while being stored to FTP server. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
	See also: • "Online Services" on page 339
031-598	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the FTP server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
033-503	Select OK to clear the message. Check the report. Delete the unnecessary data stored in the memory.
033-513	
033-517	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the password of the fax lock is correct.
033-518	Select OK to clear the message. Check if your region is set correctly.
033-519	Fax service is locked. To continue, select OK and disable the fax lock.
	See also: • "Limiting Access to Printer Operations" on page 252
033-787	Select OK to clear the message. The job is canceled.

Error Code	What You Can Do
033-788	Select OK to clear the message. Remove the received fax, or wait for a while until sending a fax is completed.
034-700	Select OK to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following: • Check if the phone line is connected properly. • Check if the destination number is correct. • Set Number of Redial to the larger value. • Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer. See also: • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 172
034-701	
034-702	
034-703	Select OK to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following: • Check if the phone line is connected properly. • Check if the destination number is available and correct. • Set Number of Redial to the larger value. • Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer. See also: • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 172
034-704	
034-705	
034-706	
034-707	Select OK to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following: • Set Number of Redial to the larger value. • Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer. • Lower Modem Speed.
034-708	Select OK to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following: • Set Number of Redial to the larger value. • Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer. • Check if the destination number is available. • Lower Modem Speed.
034-709	Select OK to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following: • Set Number of Redial to the larger value. • Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer.
034-710	
034-711	Select OK to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following: • Set Number of Redial to the larger value. • Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer. • Lower Modem Speed.
034-712	
034-713	
034-714	Select OK to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following: • Set Number of Redial to the larger value. • Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer. • Check if the destination number is available.
034-715	Select OK to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following: • Set Number of Redial to the larger value. • Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer. • Lower Modem Speed.
034-716	Select OK to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be canceled. When retrying sending the fax, lower Modem Speed .
034-717	Select OK to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be canceled. Retry sending the fax.
034-718	Select OK to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be canceled. When retrying sending the fax, lower Modem Speed .
034-719	

Error Code	What You Can Do
034-720	Select OK to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be canceled. When retrying sending the fax, try the following: • Lower Modem Speed. • Enable ECM.
034-721	Select OK to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be canceled. When retrying sending the fax, lower Modem Speed .
034-722	
034-723	
034-724	
034-725	
034-726	
034-727	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the destination number is available. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be canceled.
034-750	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the phone line is connected properly. See also: • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 172
034-751	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the destination machine blocks your fax as the junk fax. If it does, ask the receiver to disable the setting.
034-752	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the phone line is connected properly.
034-753	See also: • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 172
034-754	Select OK to clear the message. Lower Modem Speed .
034-755	
034-756	
034-757	
034-758	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the phone line is connected properly. Or, lower Modem Speed . See also: • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 172
034-759	Select OK to clear the message. Lower Modem Speed .
034-760	
034-761	
	See also: • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 172
034-762	Select OK to clear the message. Try the following: • Lower Modem Speed. • Enable ECM.
034-763	Select OK to clear the message. Lower Modem Speed .
034-764	
034-765	
034-766	
034-767	Select OK to clear the message. Check if the phone line is connected properly. See also: • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 172
034-768	Select OK to clear the message. Lower Modem Speed .

Error Code	What You Can Do
041-340	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
042-358	
042-372	
061-370	
062-321	
062-360	See also: "Online Services" on page 339
062-790	Select OK to clear the message. The scanned data is deleted. Retry scanning the document.
075-100	Check and clear the paper path, load the paper, and then select OK to clear the message.
	See also: "Clearing Paper Jams From the Front of the Printer" on page 270
075-921	Load paper for the second side (odd) pages, and select OK .
	See also: "Manual Duplex Printing" on page 100
077-100	Open the rear cover and remove the jammed paper.
077-104	See also: "Clearing Paper Jams From the Rear of the Printer" on page 271
077-106	
077-108	
077-109	
077-304	Close the rear cover.
077-900	Open the rear cover and remove the jammed paper.
	See also: "Clearing Paper Jams From the Center Output Tray" on page 273
077-901	Open the rear cover and remove the jammed paper.
	See also: "Clearing Paper Jams From the Rear of the Printer" on page 271
091-313	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
	See also: "Online Services" on page 339
091-402	The service life of your printer is coming to an end and the printer will soon stop running. If you want to keep using the printer, change the Machine Life setting to Continue Print. However, continuous use of the printer will degrade the print quality.
	See also: "Machine Life" on page 234
091-441	The printer has exceeded its service life or the settings have been changed to continue using it. The quality of printouts will degrade if the printer continues to be used.
	See also: "Machine Life" on page 234
092-310	Clean the CTD sensor.
	See also: "Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor" on page 323
092-651	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
092-661	
	See also: "Online Services" on page 339

Error Code	What You Can Do
093-423	Replace the specified toner cartridge soon.
093-424	See also: "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 324
093-425	
093-426	
093-919	Re-install or replace the specified toner cartridge.
093-920	See also: "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 324
093-921	
093-922	
093-930	Remove the specified toner cartridge and install a new one. If you do not replace the toner cartridge, print quality problems may occur.
093-931	
093-932	See also: "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 324
093-933	
093-926	Replace the specified toner cartridge with the supported one.
093-960	See also: "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 324
093-961	
093-962	
093-970	Re-install the specified toner cartridge.
093-971	See also: "Installing a Toner Cartridge" on page 327
093-972	
093-973	
116-210	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
116-314	
116-323	See also: "Online Services" on page 339
116-325	
116-326	
116-355	
116-395	
116-703	PDL emulation error has occurred. Select OK to clear the message and cancel the current print job.
116-720	
117-331	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
117-332	
117-333	See also: "Online Services" on page 339
117-334	
117-346	
117-348	Retry, and check the report. Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer. See also: "Online Services" on page 339
117-350	Open the rear cover and close to continue. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer. See also: "Online Services" on page 339
117-366	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
124-333	
134-211	See also: "Online Services" on page 339

Error Code	What You Can Do
191-310	Although the service life of your printer has been over and the printer stopped running, you can still use the printer by pressing the 8 and 0 button on the number pad at the same time for three seconds. However, continuous use of the printer will degrade the print quality. See also: • "Machine Life" on page 234
191-311	The life of your printer has been over and you can no longer use the printer.
193-700	This message indicates the printer is in the Non-Genuine mode.

Contacting Service

When you call for printer service, be prepared to describe the problem you are experiencing or the error message on the touch panel.

You need to know the model of your printer and serial number. See the label on the rear cover of your printer.

Getting Help

Fuji Xerox provides several automatic diagnostic tools to help you produce and maintain print quality.

■ Touch Panel Messages

The touch panel provides you with information and troubleshooting help. When an error or warning condition occurs, the touch panel displays a message informing you of the problem.

See also:

- "Understanding Printer Messages" on page 305

■ SimpleMonitor Alerts (Windows Only)

The SimpleMonitor is a tool that is included on the *Software Pack CD-ROM*. It automatically checks the printer status when you send a print job. If the printer is unable to print your job, the SimpleMonitor automatically displays an alert on your computer screen to let you know that the printer needs attention.

■ Obtaining the Product Information

Obtaining the Latest Print Driver

The latest print driver can be obtained by downloading it from our web site.

This section explains the procedures using Windows 7 as an example.

NOTE:

- The communication fee shall be borne by users.

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer, and then select **Printer properties**.
- 3 Select the **Configuration** tab.
- 4 Select **About**.
- 5 Click **Fuji Xerox Web Site**.
Your web browser launches and our web site is displayed.
- 6 Follow the instructions on the web site and download an appropriate print driver.

NOTE:

- The URL of the driver download service page is as follows: <http://www.fujixeroxprinters.com/>
- For the latest information about the print driver features, refer to the Help provided for the print driver.

Updating the Printer's Firmware

Our web site also provides a tool that allows you to update the printer's firmware (software embedded within the printer) from your computer.

The latest firmware and updating tool can be downloaded from the following URL.

Follow the instructions on the web site and download the correct firmware update.

<http://www.fujixeroxprinters.com/>

NOTE:

- The communication fee shall be borne by users.

Non-Genuine Mode

When toner within a toner cartridge is empty, XXXX Cartridge is Close to Life or Replace XXXX Cartridge (XXXX: Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, or Black) appears.

When you want to use the printer in the Non-Genuine mode, enable the Non-Genuine mode and replace the toner cartridge.

IMPORTANT:

- If you use the printer in the Non-Genuine mode, the performance of the printer may not be at its optimum. Any problems that may arise from the use of the Non-Genuine mode are not covered by our quality guarantee. The continuous use of the Non-Genuine mode can also cause the printer to break down, and any repair charges for such break down will be incurred by users.

NOTE:

- To disable the Non-Genuine mode, select **Off for Non-Genuine Toner** on the operator panel or deselect the check box next to **On** on the **Non-Genuine Toner** page on the **Printer Maintenance** tab in the Printer Setting Utility.

■ Using the Operator Panel

NOTE:

- Before starting the operation described below, confirm that the top service menu screen is displayed on the touch panel.

- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select the **Tools** tab.
- 3 Select **Admin Settings**.
- 4 Select **Maintenance**.
- 5 Select **Non-Genuine Toner**.
- 6 Select **On**, and then select **OK**.
The printer switches to the Non-Genuine mode.

■ Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility opens.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **Non-Genuine Toner** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **Non-Genuine Toner** page is displayed.
- 4 Select the check box next to **On**, and then click **Apply New Settings**.

Maintenance

- "Cleaning the Printer" on page 317
- "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 324
- "Ordering Supplies" on page 329
- "Storing Consumables" on page 330
- "Managing the Printer" on page 331
- "Conserving Supplies" on page 333
- "Checking Page Counts" on page 334
- "Moving the Printer" on page 335

Cleaning the Printer

This section describes how to clean the printer in order to maintain it in good condition and print clean printouts all the time.

WARNING:

- When cleaning this product, use the designated cleaning materials exclusive to it. Other cleaning materials may result in poor performance of the product. Never use aerosol cleaners to avoid catching fire and explosion.

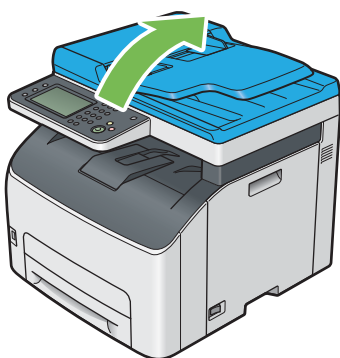
CAUTION:

- When cleaning this product, always switch off and unplug it. Access to a live machine interior may cause electric shock.

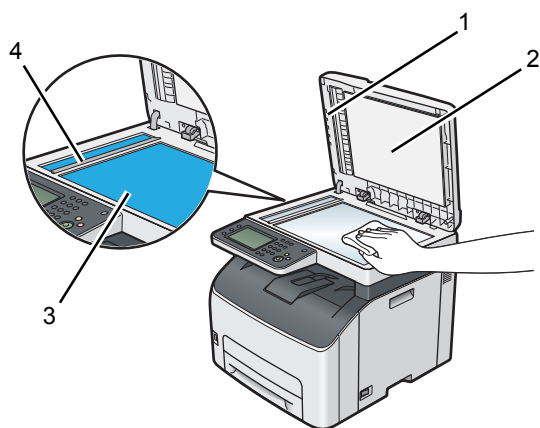
■ Cleaning the Scanner

Keep the scanner clean to ensure the best possible copies. Clean the scanner at the start of each day and during the day, as needed.

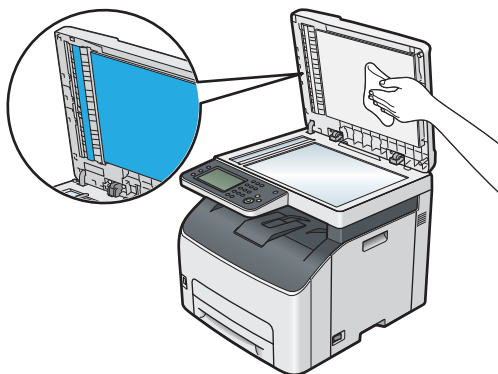
- 1 Slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with water.
- 2 Open the document cover.



- 3** Wipe the surface of the document glass and ADF glass until they are clean and dry.



- 4** Wipe the underside of the white document cover and film until they are clean and dry.



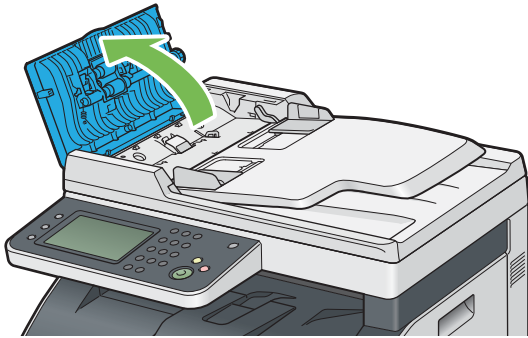
- 5** Close the document cover.



■ Cleaning the ADF Feed Roller

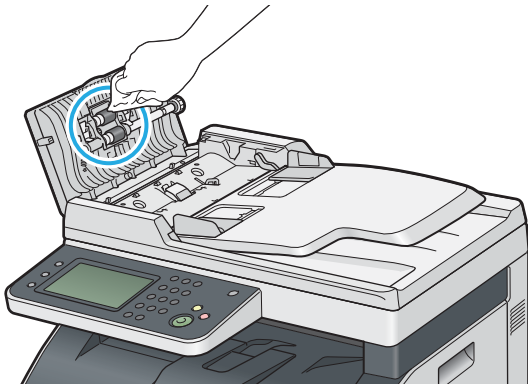
Keep the ADF feed roller clean to ensure the best possible copies. Clean the ADF feed roller at regular intervals.

- 1 Open the ADF cover.



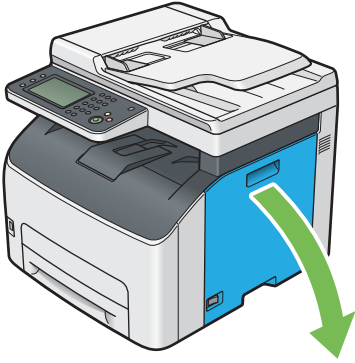
- 2 Wipe the ADF feed roller with a dry soft lint-free cloth or paper towel until it is clean.

If the ADF feed roller gets soiled with ink stains, paper from the ADF may also be soiled. In this case, slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with a neutral detergent or water, and then remove the contamination from the ADF feed roller until it is clean and dry.

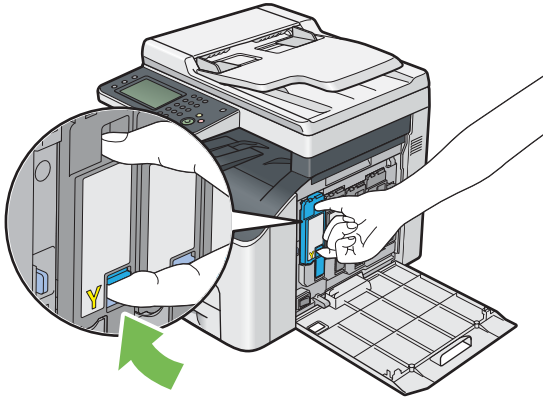


■ Cleaning Inside the Printer

- 1 Turn off the printer and disconnect the power cord.
- 2 Open the toner access cover.



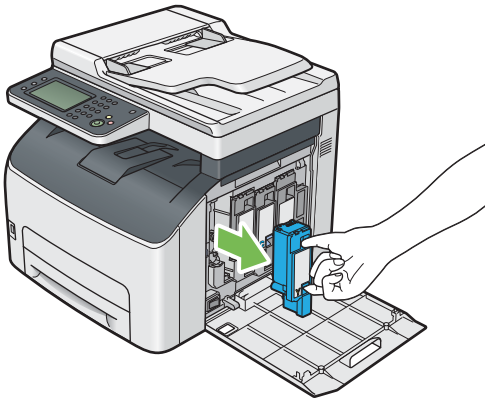
- 3 Pinch the toner cartridge firmly.



- 4 Pull the toner cartridge out.

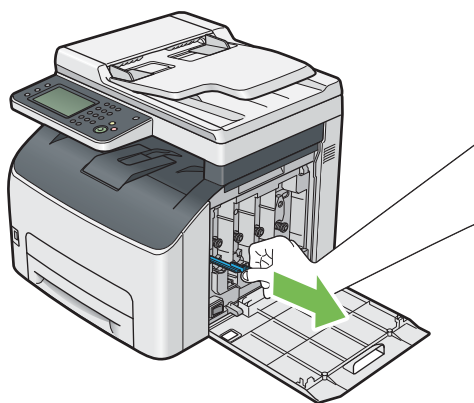
IMPORTANT:

- Always pull the toner cartridge out slowly so you do not spill any toner.

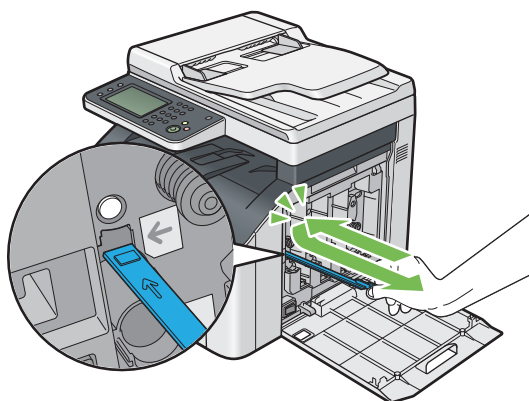


- 5 Pull the other three toner cartridges out as well.

- 6** Pull the print head cleaning rod out.

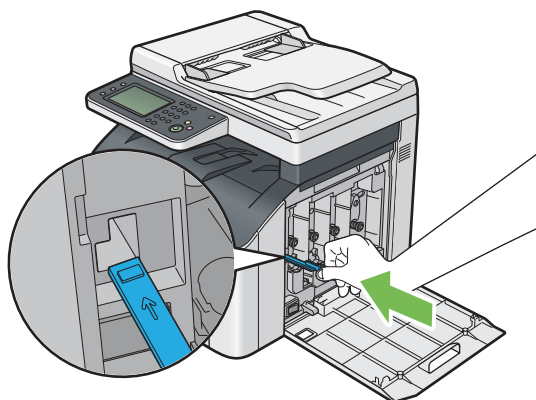


- 7** Insert the print head cleaning rod fully into the hole beside the arrow on the printer until its tip reaches the interior of the printer as illustrated below, and then pull it out.

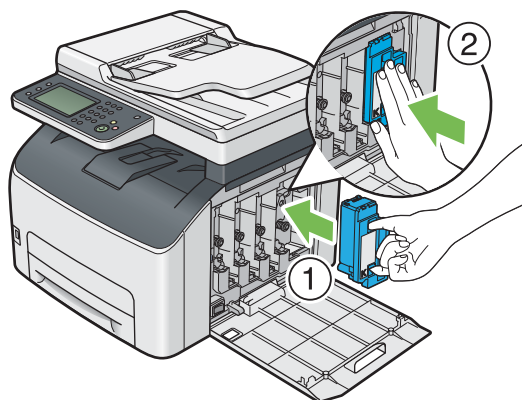


- 8** Repeat the same procedure for the other three holes.

- 9** Insert the print head cleaning rod back to its original location.

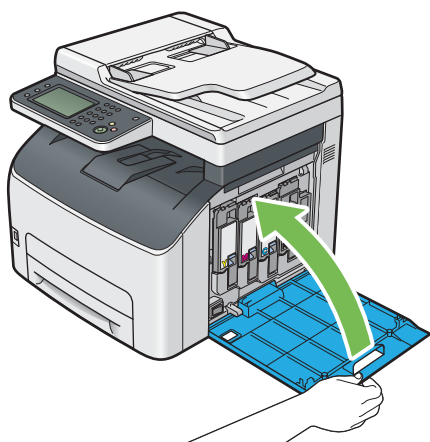


- 10** Replace the black toner cartridge by adjusting it to the associated cartridge holder, and then insert it firmly by pressing near the center of the label until the toner cartridge clicks.



- 11** Replace the other three toner cartridges as well.

- 12** Close the toner access cover.

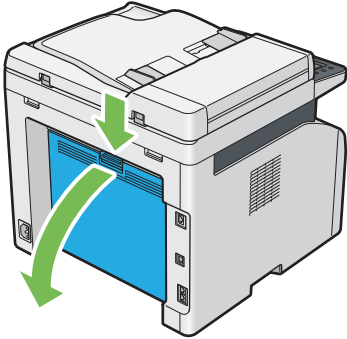


- 13** Connect the power cord and turn on the printer.

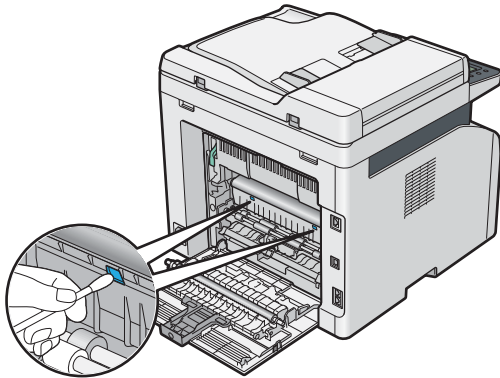
■ Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor

Clean the CTD sensor only when an alert for the CTD sensor is shown on the **Printer Status** window or operator panel.

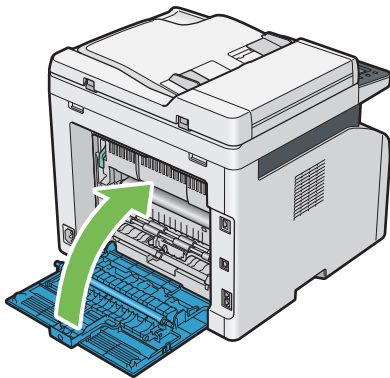
- 1 Turn off the printer and disconnect the power cord.
- 2 Push the rear cover handle and open the rear cover.



- 3 Clean the CTD sensor inside the printer with a clean dry cotton swab.



- 4 Close the rear cover.



- 5 Connect the power cord and turn on the printer.

Replacing Toner Cartridges

Fuji Xerox toner cartridges are available only through Fuji Xerox.

It is recommended that you use Fuji Xerox toner cartridges for your printer. Fuji Xerox does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Fuji Xerox.



WARNING:

- **Never use a vacuum cleaner for spilled toner and residual toner in this product, toner cartridge or toner bottle. It may catch fire by electric sparks inside a vacuum cleaner and cause explosion. Use a broom or a wet cloth to wipe off the spills. If you spill a large volume of toner, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.**
- **Never throw a toner cartridge into an open flame. Remaining toner in the cartridge may catch fire and cause burn injuries or explosion. If you have a used toner cartridge no longer needed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its disposal.**



CAUTION:

- **Keep drum cartridges (or drum if not a cartridge type) and toner cartridges out of the reach of children. If a child accidentally swallows toner, spit it out, rinse mouth with water, drink water and consult a physician immediately.**
- **When replacing drum cartridges (or drum if not a cartridge type) and toner cartridges, be careful not to spill the toner. In case of any toner spills, avoid contact with clothes, skin, eyes and mouth as well as inhalation.**
- **If toner spills onto your skin or clothing, wash it off with soap and water. If you get toner particles in the eyes, wash it out with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes until irritation is gone. Consult a physician if necessary. If you inhale toner particles, move to a fresh air location and rinse your mouth with water. If you swallow toner, spit it out, rinse your mouth with water, drink plenty of water and consult a physician immediately.**

IMPORTANT:

- Do not shake the used toner cartridge to avoid spilling of the toner.
- Be sure to use the starter toner cartridge shipped with the printer until it gets empty, and then replace it with a purchased one.

■ Overview

The printer has toner cartridges of four colors: black (K), yellow (Y), magenta (M), and cyan (C).

When a toner cartridge reaches its usable life-span, the following messages appear on the touch panel.

Message (Example)	Action
093-426 Printer Black Cartridge is Close to Life*	The specified toner cartridge has become low. Prepare a new one. The error code differs depending on the color of the toner cartridge. • 093-426: Black • 093-425: Cyan • 093-424: Magenta • 093-423: Yellow
Replace Cart. 093-933 Printer Replace Black Cartridge	The specified toner cartridge has become empty. Replace the old toner cartridge with a new one. The error code differs depending on the color of the toner cartridge. • 093-933: Black • 093-932: Cyan • 093-931: Magenta • 093-930: Yellow

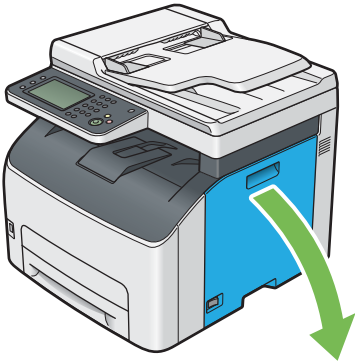
* This warning appears only when Fuji Xerox toner cartridges are used, and Non-Genuine Toner is set to Off.

IMPORTANT:

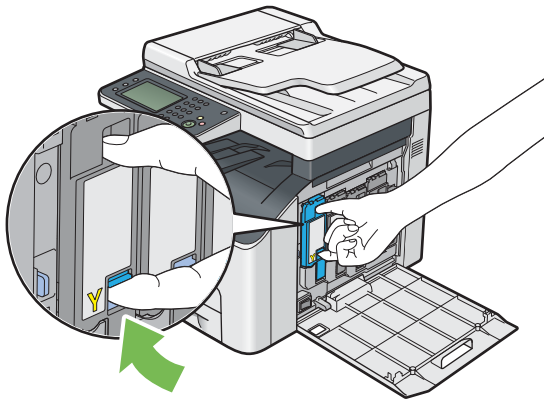
- When placing a used toner cartridge on the floor or on a table, place a few sheets of paper under the toner cartridge to catch any toner that may spill.
- Do not reuse old toner cartridges once you remove them from the printer. Doing so can impair print quality.
- Do not shake or pound the used toner cartridges. The remaining toner may spill.
- We recommend you to use up the toner cartridges within one year after removing them from the packaging.

■ Removing the Toner Cartridges

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Open the toner access cover.



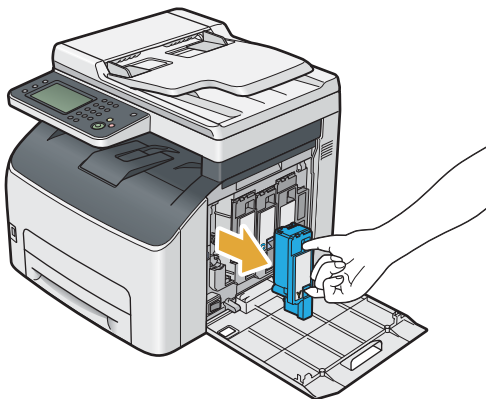
- 3 Spread a few sheets of paper on the floor or table where the removed toner cartridge is to be placed.
- 4 Pinch the toner cartridge firmly.



- 5 Pull the toner cartridge out.

IMPORTANT:

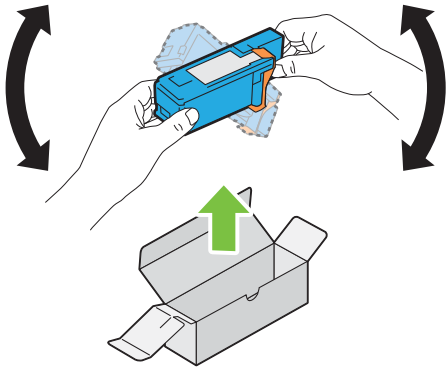
- Always pull the toner cartridge out slowly so you do not spill any toner.



- 6 Place the toner cartridge slowly on the sheets of paper spread in step 3.

■ Installing a Toner Cartridge

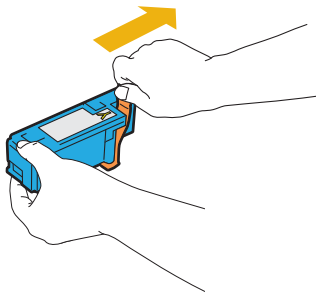
- 1 Unpack a new toner cartridge of the desired color and shake it five to six times to distribute the toner evenly.



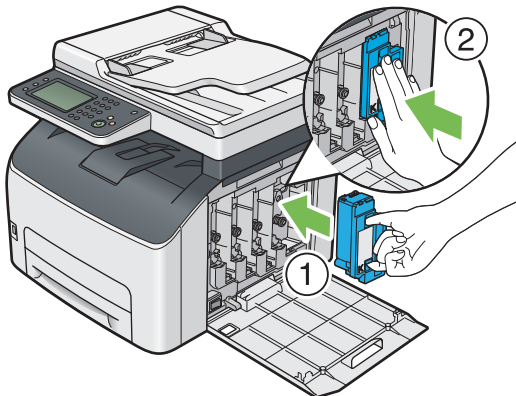
NOTE:

- Confirm that the color of the new toner cartridge matches that on the handle before replacing it.
- Handle the toner cartridge carefully to avoid spilling of the toner.

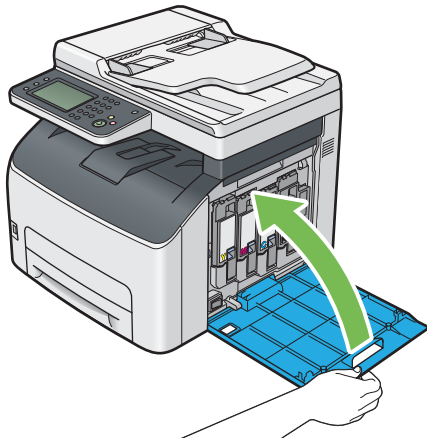
- 2 Remove the tape from the toner cartridge.



- 3 Adjust the toner cartridge to the associated cartridge holder, and then insert it firmly by pressing near the center of the label until the toner cartridge clicks.



- 4 Close the toner access cover.



- 5 Turn on the printer.
- 6 Pack the removed toner cartridge in the box in which the installed toner cartridge was packed up.
- 7 Take care not to contact with the spilled toner and remove the sheets of paper spread under the removed toner cartridge.

Ordering Supplies

The toner cartridges need to be ordered occasionally. Each toner cartridge includes installation instructions on the box.

■ Consumables

IMPORTANT:

- Use of consumables not recommended by Fuji Xerox can impair machine quality and performance. Use only consumables recommended by Fuji Xerox.

Product Name	Product Code	Printable number of pages
Toner Cartridge [Black] High capacity	CT202264	Approx. 2000 pages
Toner Cartridge [Yellow] Standard capacity	CT202270	Approx. 700 pages
Toner Cartridge [Yellow] High capacity	CT202267	Approx. 1400 pages
Toner Cartridge [Magenta] Standard capacity	CT202269	Approx. 700 pages
Toner Cartridge [Magenta] High capacity	CT202266	Approx. 1400 pages
Toner Cartridge [Cyan] Standard capacity	CT202268	Approx. 700 pages
Toner Cartridge [Cyan] High capacity	CT202265	Approx. 1400 pages

- Average standard pages. Declared yield in accordance with ISO/IEC 19798 and ISO/IEC 24712. These values are estimates and vary depending on conditions such as the content being printed, paper size, paper type, the machine's operating environment, initializing process performed when you turn on or off the printer, and adjustments to maintain print quality.

NOTE:

- The printable number of pages for the starter toner cartridges shipped with the printer are approximately 1000 pages for black toner cartridge and 700 pages for yellow, magenta, and cyan toner cartridges.
- Each toner cartridge includes installation instructions on the box.

■ When to Order Toner Cartridges

The touch panel displays a warning when the toner cartridge nears its replacement time. Verify that you have replacements on hand. It is important to order a toner cartridge when the messages first appear to avoid interruptions to your printing. The touch panel displays an error message when the toner cartridge must be replaced.

To order toner cartridges, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

IMPORTANT:

- This printer is designed to provide the most stable performance and print quality when used with the recommended toner cartridges. Not using toner cartridges recommended for this machine degrades the performance and printing quality of the printer. You could also incur charges if the machine breaks down. To receive customer support and achieve the optimum performance of the printer, be sure to use recommended toner cartridges.

■ Recycling Supplies

- For environmental protection and efficient use of resources, Fuji Xerox reuses returned toner cartridges and drums (photoreceptors) to make recycle parts, recycle materials or energy recovery.
- Proper disposal is required for toner cartridges no longer needed. Do not open toner cartridges. Return them to your local Fuji Xerox representative.

Storing Consumables

Store consumables in their original packaging until you need to use them. Do not store consumables in:

- Temperatures greater than 40°C (104°F).
- An environment with extreme changes in humidity or temperature.
- Direct sunlight.
- Dusty places.
- A car for a long period of time.
- An environment where corrosive gases are present.
- An environment with salty air.

Managing the Printer

■ Checking or Managing the Printer With the CentreWare Internet Services

When the printer is installed in a TCP/IP environment, you can check printer status and configure settings using a web browser on a network computer. You can also use the CentreWare Internet Services to check the remaining volume of consumables and the paper loaded in this printer.

NOTE:

- When using the printer as a local printer, you cannot use the CentreWare Internet Services. For details about checking the status of a local printer, see "Checking Printer Status With the SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)" on page 331.

Starting the CentreWare Internet Services

Use the following procedure to start the CentreWare Internet Services.

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.
The CentreWare Internet Services page appears.

• Using Online Help

For details regarding the items that can be set in each CentreWare Internet Services page, click **Help** to display the online Help.

■ Checking Printer Status With the SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)

The SimpleMonitor is a tool that is installed with your print driver. It automatically checks the printer status when you send a print job. The SimpleMonitor can also check the status of the tray and remaining amount of toner cartridges.

Starting the SimpleMonitor

Double-click the SimpleMonitor icon on the taskbar or right-click the icon and select **Printer Selection**.

If the SimpleMonitor icon is not displayed on the taskbar, open the SimpleMonitor from the **Start** menu.

The following procedure uses Microsoft® Windows® 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **SimpleMonitor-Ctype for Asia-Pacific**.
The window to select a printer appears.
- 2 Click the name of the desired printer from the list.
The **Printer Status** Window appears.

For details about the functions of the SimpleMonitor, refer to the Help of the SimpleMonitor.

See also:

- "SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)" on page 40

■ Checking Printer Status Through E-mail

When connected in a network environment where sending and receiving of e-mail is possible, the printer can send an e-mail report to specified e-mail addresses containing the following information:

- The network settings and the printer status
- The error status which has occurred on the printer

Setting the E-mail Environment

Activate the CentreWare Internet Services. On the **Properties** tab, configure the following settings according to your e-mail environment. After configuring the settings on each screen, always click **Apply**. For details about each item, refer to the online Help for the CentreWare Internet Services.

Item	Item to be configured	Description
General Setup > StatusMessenger	Recipient's E-mail Address 1	Set the e-mail address to which notices about changes in printer status or errors are sent.
	Recipient's E-mail Address 2	
	Notification Items	Set the contents of the notices to send in the e-mail.
Port Status	StatusMessenger	Select the Enabled check box.
Protocol Settings > E-mail	SMTP Server Settings	Select appropriate settings for sending and receiving e-mail.
	• Machine's E-mail Address	
	• SMTP Server Address	
	• SMTP Server Port Number	
	Send Authentication	
	• E-Mail Send Authentication	
	• Login Name	
	• Password	
	• Re-enter Password	
	POP3 Server Settings	
	• POP3 Server Address	
	• POP3 Server Port Number	
	• Login Name	
	• Password	
	• Re-enter Password	

Conserving Supplies

You can change several settings in your print driver to conserve toner cartridge and paper.

Supply	Setting	Function
Toner cartridge	Windows print driver: Toner Saving Mode in the Graphics tab	This feature allows the users to select a print mode that uses less toner. When this feature is used, the image quality will be lower than when it is not used.
Print media	Windows print driver: Multiple Up in the Layout tab	The printer prints two or more pages on one side of a sheet. The available numbers that each print driver can print one sheet of paper are as follows: • Windows print driver: 2, 4, 8, or 16 pages Combined with the duplex setting, feature allows you to print up to 32 pages on one sheet of paper. (16 images on the front and 16 on the back)

Checking Page Counts

The total number of printed pages can be checked at the operator panel. Three meters are available: `Meter 1` (color prints), `Meter 2` (monochrome prints), and `Meter 4` (`Meter 1` + `Meter 2`). `Meter 3` always shows 0 on your printer.

The `Meter Readings` counts the number of pages printed properly. Single side color print (including pages per sheet (N-Up)) is counted as one job, and 2-sided print (including pages per sheet (N-Up)) is counted as two. During 2-sided printing, if an error occurs after one side is printed properly, it is counted as one page.

When printing color data, which has been converted by using ICC profile on an application, with the `Color` setting, the data is printed by color even if it seems to be black and white data on the monitor. In that case, `Meter 1` and `Meter 4` are increased.

When doing 2-sided printing, a blank page may be inserted automatically depending on the settings of the application. In this case, the blank page is counted as one page. However, when doing 2-sided printing for odd number of pages, the blank page inserted to the back side of the last odd page is not counted.

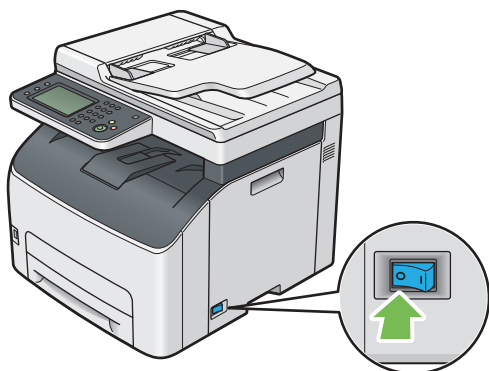
See also:

- "Meter Readings" on page 207

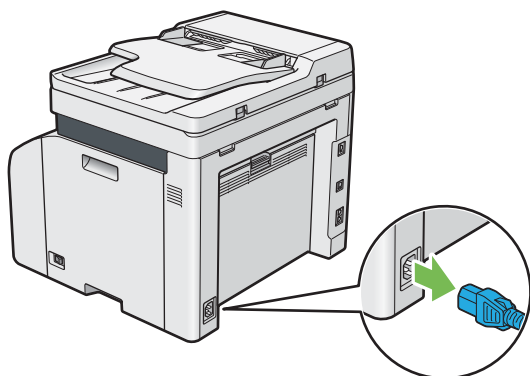
- 1 Press the  (**System**) button.
- 2 Select `Meter Readings`.
- 3 Check the values for each meter.

Moving the Printer

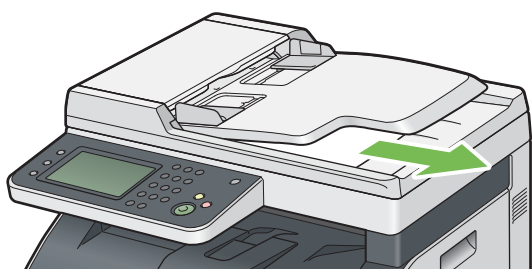
- 1 Turn off the printer.



- 2 Disconnect the power cord, interface cable, and any other cables.



- 3 Remove any paper in the document output tray.

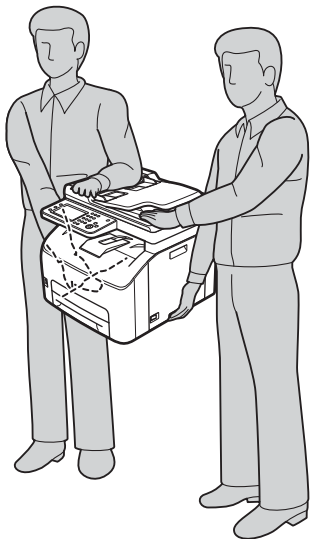


- 4 Remove any paper in the center output tray if there is.



5 Close the output tray extension if it is extended.

6 Lift the printer and move it gently.



7 Adjust the color registration before using your printer.

See also:

- "Adjusting Color Registration" on page 291

Contacting Fuji Xerox

- "Technical Support" on page 338
- "Online Services" on page 339

Technical Support

Fuji Xerox recommends the Customer first utilize support materials shipped with the product, product diagnostics, information contained on the web, and e-mail support. If unsuccessful, to obtain service under product warranty the Customer must notify Fuji Xerox Telephone Support or its authorized service representative of the defect before the expiration of the warranty period. Customer will provide appropriate assistance to Telephone Support personnel to resolve issues, such as restoration of the operating system, software program and drivers to their default configuration and settings, verification of functionality of Fuji Xerox supplied products, replacement of customer replaceable units, clearing paper misfeeds and cleaning the unit and other prescribed routine and preventative maintenance.

If the Customer's product contains features that enable Fuji Xerox or its authorized service representative to diagnose and repair problems with the product remotely, Fuji Xerox may request that the Customer allow such remote access to the product.

Online Services

You can find detail Product and Consumable warranty information on our website at <http://www.fujixeroxprinters.com/>

Fuji Xerox Online Support Assistant provides instructions and troubleshooting guides to resolve your printer problems. It is an easy-to-use, searchable online help. To find out more, please visit our online support at <http://www.fujixeroxprinters.com/>

Index

A

Address Book	195
Address Book Editor	42
Address Book List	207
ADF cover	26, 267
ADF glass	26, 318
Adjust Altitude	235
Adjust BTR	232
Adjust Fusing Unit	233
Adjust Paper Type	232
Adjust Touchscreen	235
Adjusting color registration	291
Admin Settings	207
Adobe Protocol	220
Advanced Settings	220
AirPrint	119
Alerts	
SimpleMonitor	314
Ans/FAX Mode	200
Applicable telephone line	22, 23
Audio	229
Auto Answer Ans/FAX	200
Auto Answer Fax	200
Auto Answer Setup	200, 223
Auto Answer TEL/FAX	200
Auto Background Suppression	132, 241, 245
Auto Redial Setup	201, 225
Auto Reg Adjust	233
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)	25, 26
Automatic redialing	181
Available characters	257
Avoiding jam	266

B

Basic printer problems	276
Black-and-white	
Selecting for scanning	168
Bond	232, 233
BTR Refresh	234

C

Canceling a print job	106
From computer	106
From operator panel	106
Center output tray	25, 267
CentreWare Internet Services	38
Managing printer	331
Online Help for	331
Starting	331
Changing numbers	257
Clean Developer	234
Clear All button	27
Clear button	27
Clear Job History	235
Clearing jam	266

Clearing paper jam

From ADF	268
From center output tray	273
From front of the printer	270
From rear of the printer	271
Clock mode	175
Coding method	22
Collated	132
Collation	239
Color	
Selecting for scanning	168
Color Balance	241
Color capability	17
Color Registration	233
Color registration chart	292
Company Name	200, 221
Confirm Recipients	237
Connecting printer	49
Connection specifications	49
Connection Speed	218
Connection type	49
Conserving supplies	333
Consumables	329
Contacting service	313
Continuous copy	17
Continuous copy speed	17
Continuous print speed	19
Control Panel	231
Copy problem	289
Copy quality problems	290
Create Folder	247
CTD sensor	323

D

Date & Time	228
Defaults Settings	239
Delayed Send	243
Demo Page	206
Determining values	293
Dial Type	201, 225
Digital certificate problems	303
Digital certificates	261
Dimensions	18
Direct Fax	183
Discard Size	201, 225
Display Brightness	229
Display Manual Fax Recipients	202, 227
Display of Network Information	238
Display problems	277
Document cover	26
Document feeder tray	25, 26
Document glass	26, 318
Document guides	26
Document output tray	25
Document Size	23, 134
Document Type	131
Domain Filtering	237
Draft Mode	212
DRPD Mode	200

DRPD Pattern 200, 222

E

ECM 202, 226
Edge Erase 136, 242, 246
Edit E-mail From Field 237
E-mail Server Address Book 230
Emulation 20
Entering values 294
Envelope 232, 233
Error and Warning Messages 314
Error History 206
Ethernet / Wireless 215
Ethernet port 26, 49
Express Scan Manager 43
Extel Hook Threshold 200, 222

F

Fault Timeout 231
Fax Activity 202, 207, 227
Fax Address Book 207
Fax Broadcast 202, 227
Fax Cover Page 201, 226
Fax Line Settings 220
FAX Mode 200
Fax Number 200, 221
Fax problems 296
Fax Protocol 202
Fax Reports 202, 227
Fax Server Address Book 230
Fax Transmit 202, 227
File Format 244
File Name 246
Film 318
First copy output time 17
Font 210
Font Pitch 211
Font Size 211
Fonts 20
Form Line 211
Forward Settings 201, 224

G

General 228
Getting help 314
Google Cloud Print 120
Gray Balance 242
Group dialing 192
Groups 208

H

Halftone/Printable colors 17

I

ID Card Copy 137
Image Depth 213
Image Enhance 212
Images
 Setting color mode 168
Incoming Defaults 223
Individuals 207

Initialize NVM 235
Installing a toner cartridge 327
Installing print driver
 Mac OS X 83
 Windows 60
Interface 20, 21
Interval Timer 201
IP Filter 220
IP Mode 217

J

Jam 275
Job History 206
Job Status button 27
Job Timeout 232
Junk Fax Filter 200, 224

K

Keyboard Layout 249

L

Labels 232, 233
Launcher 41
Layout 214
LCD 27
Levers 26, 267
Light Card 232, 233
Lighten / Darken 131, 178, 241, 243, 245
Limiting access to printer operations 252
Line Monitor 200, 221
Line Termination 212
Line Type 200, 221
Liquid crystal display 27
Loading envelope
 Standard 150 sheet tray 98
Loading letterhead
 Standard 150 sheet tray 100
Loading print media 96
 Standard 150 sheet tray 96
Login Attempts 238
Low Toner Alert Message 229
LW Gloss Card 232, 233

M

Machine Life 234
Main components 25
Managing printer 331
Manual duplex printing 100
Max E-Mail Size 246
Measurements 228
Memory 17
Meter Readings 207
Meters
 Total page counts 334
Modem Speed 202, 226
Mottle 283
Moving printer 335
Multiple Up 333

N

Network 215

Non-Genuine Toner	235
Number of Redial	201
Number Pad	27
N-Up	135

O

Off Hook Wake Up	230
Operating system	20, 23
Operator panel	25
Ordering toner cartridges	329
Orientation	209
Original paper size	17
Original Size	240, 244
Original size Setting for scanning	169
Original Type	179, 241, 243
Output Color	131, 212, 213, 214, 239, 244, 247
Output paper size	17
Output paper weight	17
Output tray capacity	18
Output tray extension	25, 103

P

Page description language	19
Panel Lock	236, 250
Panel Settings	206, 249
Panel Settings page	34
Paper chute	26
Paper Error	242
Paper feed roller	26
Paper jam location	267
Paper Size	208, 214
Paper tray capacity	17
Paper Tray Settings	247
Parts name	25
PCL	208
PCL Fonts List	206
PDF	213
PDF Password	214, 247
Peer-to-Peer	79
Phone connector	26, 49
Plain	232, 233
Point and Print	76
Port Status	238
Post Script	213
Power connector	26
Power consumption	18
Power on Wizard	231
Power Saver button	27
Power saver mode	254
Power Saver Timer	228, 254
Power supply	18
Power switch	25
Prefix Dial	201, 202, 226
Print driver installing Mac OS X	83
Windows	60
Print driver pre-install status	60
Print head cleaning rod	25
Print media	333
Dimensions	96

Print Mode	214
Print quality problems	279
Print resolution	17, 19
Printer connection and software installation	46
Printer Setting Utility	39
Printer software	36
Printer status StatusMessenger	332
Printing	105
Custom paper	112
Printing basics	91
Printing from computer	105
Printing problems	278
Product features	13
Protocol	19
Protocol Monitor	206
Protocols	219
PS	213
PS Data Format	239
PS Error Report	213
PS Fonts List	206
PS Job Timeout	213

Q

Quality / File Size	246
Quantity	212, 214

R

RAM Disk	230
Rear cover	26, 267
Rear cover handle	26
Receive Mode	200, 223
Recording paper size	22
Recycled	232, 233
Recycling supplies	329
Redial / Pause button	27
Redial Interval	201
Reduce / Enlarge	133, 239
Reduction/Enlargement	17
Region	200, 221
Remote Receive	201, 225
Removing the toner cartridges	326
Report / List	206
Report page	122
Reset Network Setup	220
Reset Wireless	218
Resetting to factory defaults	256
Resolution	178, 243, 244
Setting for scanning	169
Ring Tone Volume	200, 223
Ringer Volume	198

S

Scan driver/Printer utility problems	300
Scan resolution	17, 21, 22
Scan speed	21
Scan to E-mail	21
Scan to PC	21

Scanning	
Black-and-white images	168
Color images	168
Scan resolution	169
Setting color mode	168
Setting image file type	168
Specifying original size	169
Suppress background color	169
Scanning problems	298
Secure Print	107
Secure Receive	201, 224
Secure Settings	236
Send document size	22
Send Header	202, 226
Sending a fax	176
Sending a fax automatically	180
Sending a fax manually	181
Server Address Book	259
Server Phone Book	259
Service Lock	236
Services Home button	27
Setting copy options	131
Setting the printer ID	174
Setting the time and date	175
Setting up for Web Services on Devices (WSD)	72
Setting your region	174
Setup Disk Creation Tool	44
Sharpness	132, 241, 245
Sides Per Pages	242, 247
SimpleMonitor	40
SimpleMonitor Alerts	314
Software Download	238
Space requirement	18
Speaker Volume	198
Specification	16
Standard 150 Sheet Tray	25, 267
Start button	27
Status LED (Data)	27
Status LED (Error)	27
Status LED (Mobile)	27
StatusMessenger	
Checking printer status	174, 332
Configuring	332
Stop button	27
Stored Documents	207
Storing consumables	330
Symbol Set	211
System button	27
System Settings	206

T

TCP/IP	217
TEL Mode	200
TEL/FAX Mode	200
TIFF File Format	246
Timers	231
Toner access cover	25
Toner cartridges	
Conserving	333
When to order	329
Toner Refresh	234
Tool Without An Interesting Name (TWAIN)	143

Touch panel	27
Touch panel messages	314
Transfer belt	26, 267
Transfer roller	26
Transmission Defaults	225
Transmission mode	22
Transmission resolution	23
Transmission speed	22, 23
Transmission time	22

U

USB direct print	109
USB drive	25
USB port	26, 49
USB storage device	163
Using the number pad	257

W

Wall jack connector	26, 49, 173
Warm-up time	17
Warning and error messages	314
Weight	18
White document cover	318
Width guides	97
Wi-Fi Direct	114, 218
Wi-Fi Direct problems	302
Wi-Fi Status	207
Windows Image Acquisition (WIA)	144
Wireless problems	301
Wireless Setup Wizard	215
WPS Setup	217

DocuPrint CM225 fw
User Guide

ME6939E2-1 (Edition 1)

July 2014

Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

Copyright© 2014 by Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.